

---

UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 8-K

CURRENT REPORT

Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the  
Securities Exchange Act of 1934

Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported): February 6, 2019

**Monocle Acquisition Corporation**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction  
of incorporation)

**001-38801**  
(Commission File Number)

**83-1751907**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501**  
**New York, NY**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**10022**  
(Zip Code)

**(212) 446-6981**  
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

**Not Applicable**  
(Former name or former address, if changed since last report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

- Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)
- Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§240.12b-2 of this chapter).

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

---

---

**Item 3.02. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities.**

On February 11, 2019, simultaneously with the consummation of the initial public offering (the "IPO") of units ("Units") of Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "Company"), the Company consummated the private placement (the "Private Placement") of an aggregate of 717,500 units (the "Private Units") at a price of \$10.00 per Private Unit, generating total gross proceeds of \$7,175,000, to Monocle Partners, LLC (the "Sponsor") and Cowen Investments II LLC ("Cowen Investments"). No underwriting discounts or commissions were paid with respect to the Private Placement. The Private Placement was conducted as a non-public transaction and, as a transaction by an issuer not involving a public offering, is exempt from registration under the Securities Act in reliance upon Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933 (as amended, the "Securities Act"). In the Private Placement, the Sponsor purchased 591,334 Private Units and Cowen Investments purchased 126,166 Private Units. The Private Units are identical to the Units, except that if held by the original holder or their permitted assigns, the underlying warrants (i) may be exercised on a cashless basis, (ii) are not subject to redemption and (iii) with respect to private warrants held by Cowen Investments, will not be exercisable more than five years after the Effective Date of the Registration Statement (as such terms are defined in Item 8.01 below). If the Private Units are held by holders other than the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees, then the warrants included in the Private Units will be redeemable by the Company and exercisable by the holders on the same basis as the warrants included in the Units sold in the IPO. In addition, the Private Units (and the securities underlying the Private Units) will, subject to certain limited exceptions, be subject to transfer restrictions until after the completion of the Company's initial business combination.

**Item 5.02. Departure of Directors or Certain Officers; Election of Directors; Appointment of Certain Officers; Compensatory Arrangements of Certain Officers.**

Effective as of February 6, 2019, the following individuals were appointed to the board of directors of the Company: Sai S. Devabhaktuni, C. Robert Kehler, Donald W. Manvel and John C. Pescatore. Additional information regarding, among other things, each individual's background, board committee membership and compensatory arrangements is contained in the Registration Statement and is incorporated by reference herein.

**Item 5.03. Amendments to Certificate of Incorporation or Bylaws; Change in Fiscal Year.**

On February 6, 2019, the Company filed its amended and restated certificate of incorporation (the "Certificate of Incorporation") with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, which was effective the same day. Among other things, the Certificate of Incorporation authorizes the issuance of up to 200,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Common Stock"), and up to 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. The terms of the Certificate of Incorporation are set forth in the Registration Statement and are incorporated herein by reference. The foregoing description of the Certificate of Incorporation is qualified in its entirety by reference to the full text of the Certificate of Incorporation, which is attached as Exhibit 3.1 hereto and is incorporated by reference herein.

**Item 8.01. Other Events.**

On February 11, 2019, the Company completed its IPO of 17,250,000 Units, including the issuance of 2,250,000 Units as a result of the underwriters' full exercise of their over-allotment option. Each Unit consists of one share of Common Stock and one redeemable warrant ("Warrant"). Each Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share. The Company completed its IPO pursuant to the Company's registration statement on Form S-1, as amended (File No. 333-228470) (the "Registration Statement"). The Registration Statement was declared effective by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on February 6, 2019 (the "Effective Date").

In connection with the effectiveness of the Registration Statement and the closing of the IPO, the Company entered into the following agreements:

- An Underwriting Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Cowen and Company, LLC ("Cowen"), as representative of the several underwriters;

- A Business Combination Marketing Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, Cowen and Chardan Capital Markets, LLC;
- A Warrant Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“Continental”);
- A Letter Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, the Sponsor, Cowen Investments and each of the officers and directors of the Company;
- An Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Continental;
- A Unit Purchase Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and the Sponsor;
- A Unit Purchase Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Cowen Investments;
- A Registration Rights Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, the Sponsor, Cowen Investments and the initial stockholders party thereto; and
- An Administrative Services Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Monocle Management LLC.

A total of \$174,225,000 of the net proceeds from the IPO and the Private Placement were placed in a trust account established for the benefit of the Company’s public stockholders (the “Trust Account”), with Continental acting as trustee. Except for the withdrawal of interest to pay taxes, none of the funds held in the Trust Account will be released from the Trust Account until the earlier of (i) the completion of the Company’s initial business combination, (ii) the redemption of the Company’s public shares in connection with a stockholder vote to amend any provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company’s obligation to redeem 100% of the Company’s public shares if the Company is unable to complete an initial business combination within the required time period or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders’ rights or pre-initial business combination activity and (iii) the redemption of 100% of the Company’s public shares if the Company is unable to complete an initial business combination within the required time period.

In connection with the IPO, the Company issued press releases announcing the pricing and closing of the IPO, copies of which are attached hereto as Exhibits 99.1 and 99.2, respectively, and are incorporated by reference herein.

#### **Item 9.01. Financial Statements and Exhibits.**

(d) Exhibits.

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
<a href="#"><u>1.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Underwriting Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Cowen and Company, LLC</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>1.2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Business Combination Marketing Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, Cowen and Company, LLC and Chardan Capital Markets, LLC</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>3.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>4.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Warrant Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Letter Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, Monocle Partners, LLC, Cowen Investments II LLC and each of the officers and directors of the Company</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.3</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Unit Purchase Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Monocle Partners, LLC</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.4</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Unit Purchase Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Cowen Investments II LLC</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.5</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Registration Rights Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, among the Company, Monocle Partners, LLC, Cowen Investments II LLC and the initial stockholders</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>10.6</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Administrative Services Agreement, dated February 6, 2019, between the Company and Monocle Management LLC</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>99.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Press release, dated February 6, 2019</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>99.2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Press release, dated February 11, 2019</u></a>

**SIGNATURE**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

Date: February 12, 2019

15,000,000 Units

## MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

UNDERWRITING AGREEMENT

February 6, 2019

COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC  
as Representative of the several Underwriters  
599 Lexington Avenue  
New York, New York 10022

Dear Sirs:

1. **INTRODUCTORY.** Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), proposes to sell, pursuant to the terms of this Agreement, to the several underwriters named in Schedule A hereto (the “**Underwriters**,” or, each, an “**Underwriter**”), an aggregate of 15,000,000 units (the “**Firm Units**”) of the Company at a purchase price (net of discounts and commissions) of \$9.80 per Firm Unit. Each Firm Unit consists of one share of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”) and one warrant that entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock (the “**Public Warrants**”). The Company also proposes to sell to the Underwriters, upon the terms and conditions set forth in Section 3 hereof, up to an additional 2,250,000 units, each unit consisting of one share of Common Stock and one Public Warrant (the “**Optional Units**”). The Firm Units and the Optional Units are hereinafter collectively sometimes referred to as the “**Public Units**.” Cowen and Company, LLC (“**Cowen**”) is acting as representative of the several Underwriters and in such capacity is hereinafter referred to as the “**Representative**.” The several Underwriters propose initially to offer the Public Units for sale upon the terms set forth in the Prospectus.

The Common Stock and Public Warrants included in the Firm Units will not be separately tradable until the 52nd day after the date hereof unless the Representative informs the Company of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, subject to the Company filing a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the Company’s receipt of gross proceeds of the Offering (as defined below) and announcing when such separate trading will begin. Each Public Warrant entitles its holder, upon exercise, to purchase one share of Common Stock for \$11.50 per share during the period commencing on the later of thirty (30) days after the completion of an initial Business Combination (as defined below) or twelve (12) months from the closing of the initial public offering contemplated by this Agreement (the “**Offering**”) and terminating on the five-year anniversary of the date of the completion of such Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. As used herein, the term “**Business Combination**” (as described more fully in the Registration Statement (as defined below)) shall mean a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization, recapitalization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses involving the Company.

The Company has entered into an Investment Management Trust Agreement, effective as of February 6, 2019, with Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“**CST**”), as trustee, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.2 to the Registration Statement (the “**Trust Agreement**”), pursuant to which a portion of the proceeds from the sale of the Private Placement Units (as defined below) and the proceeds from the Offering will be deposited and held in a trust account (the “**Trust Account**”) for the benefit of the Company, the Underwriters and the holders of the Public Units.

The Company has entered into a Warrant Agreement, effective as of February 6, 2019, with respect to the Warrants (as defined below) with CST, as warrant agent, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 4.4 to the Registration Statement (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), pursuant to which CST will act as warrant agent in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, redemption and exercise of the Warrants.

The Company has entered into certain Founder Shares Subscription Agreements (together, the "**Founder Subscription Agreements**") dated as of September 26, 2018, with each of Monocle Partners, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "**Sponsor**"), and Cowen Investments II, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("**Cowen Investments**") and, together with the Sponsor, the "**Founders**"), in the forms filed as Exhibits 10.3 and 10.4, respectively, to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Sponsor and Cowen Investments purchased an aggregate of 5,390,625 shares of Common Stock and 359,375 shares of Common Stock, respectively, for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000, or approximately \$0.004 per share (the "**Founder Shares**"). In November 2018, the Sponsor transferred 15,000 Founder Shares to each of its initial director nominees. In November 2018, the Founders forfeited an aggregate of 1,437,500 Founder Shares as a result of which they own an aggregate of 4,312,500 Founder Shares as of the date hereof.

Up to 527,344 Founder Shares and 35,156 Founder Shares held by the Sponsor and Cowen Investments, respectively, are subject to forfeiture depending on the extent to which the Over-Allotment Option (as defined below) is exercised. The Founder Shares are substantially similar to the shares of Common Stock included in the Public Units except as described in the General Disclosure Package (as defined below) and the Prospectus (as defined below).

The Company has entered into certain Unit Purchase Agreements (the "**Unit Purchase Agreements**") dated as of February 6, 2019, with the Sponsor and Cowen Investments, substantially in the forms filed as Exhibits 10.5 and 10.6, respectively, to the Registration Statement. Pursuant to the Unit Purchase Agreements, the Sponsor and Cowen Investments agreed to purchase 541,667 units (or up to 591,334 units depending on the extent to which the Over-Allotment Option is exercised) and 108,333 units (or up to 126,166 units depending on the extent to which the Over-Allotment Option is exercised), respectively, each unit consisting of one share of Common Stock (the "**Private Placement Shares**") and one warrant to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share (the "**Private Placement Units**" and, together with the Public Units, the "**Units**"). The warrants included in the Private Placement Units are referred to herein as the "**Private Placement Warrants**" and, collectively with the Public Warrants, the "**Warrants**." The Private Placement Units and Private Placement Warrants are substantially similar to the Public Units and Public Warrants, respectively, except as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

The Company has entered into a Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of February 6, 2019, with the Founders and the other parties thereto (the "**Registration Rights Agreement**"), substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.7 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Company has granted certain registration rights in respect of, among other securities, the Founder Shares and the Private Placement Units and underlying securities.

The Company has entered into a letter agreement (the "**Insider Letter**"), dated February 6, 2019, with the Founders and each of the Company's executive officers, directors and director nominees prior to the Offering, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

The Company has entered into that certain administrative services agreement, dated as of February 6, 2019, with the Sponsor (the "**Administrative Services Agreement**"), substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.10 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Company will pay to an affiliate of the Sponsor an aggregate monthly fee of \$10,000 for office space and general and administrative services.

The Company has issued that certain non-interest bearing promissory note in favor of the Sponsor, dated as of September 26, 2018 (the "**Sponsor Promissory Note**"), in the form filed as Exhibit 10.9 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Company has promised to pay to the Sponsor up to an aggregate principal amount of \$300,000.

The Company has entered into that certain business combination marketing agreement, dated as of February 6, 2019, with the Underwriters (the "**Business Combination Marketing Agreement**," and collectively with the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Founder Subscription Agreements, the Unit Purchase Agreements, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Insider Letter, the Administrative Services Agreement and the Sponsor Promissory Note, the "**Other Transaction Agreements**"), substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 1.2 to the Registration Statement.

2. **REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES.** The Company represents and warrants to the several Underwriters, as of the date hereof and as of each Closing Date (as defined below), and agrees with the several Underwriters, that:

(a) **Registration Statement.** A registration statement of the Company on Form S-1 (File No. 333- 228470) (including all amendments thereto filed before the execution of this Agreement, the “**Initial Registration Statement**”) in respect of the Public Units, Public Shares (as defined below) and Public Warrants has been filed with the Commission. The Initial Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto, each in the form heretofore delivered to you, have been declared effective by the Commission in such form and meet the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder (the “**Rules and Regulations**”). Other than (i) the Initial Registration Statement, (ii) a registration statement, if any, increasing the size of the offering filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act and the Rules and Regulations (a “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**”), (iii) any Preliminary Prospectus (as defined below) and (iv) the Prospectus contemplated by this Agreement to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act in accordance with Section 4(i)(a) hereof, no other document with respect to the offer and sale of the Public Units, Public Shares or Public Warrants has heretofore been filed with the Commission. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Initial Registration Statement, any post-effective amendment thereto or the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, if any, has been issued and no proceeding for that purpose or pursuant to Section 8A of the Securities Act has been initiated or threatened by the Commission (any preliminary prospectus included in the Initial Registration Statement or filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424 under the Securities Act is hereinafter called a “**Preliminary Prospectus**”). The Initial Registration Statement, including all exhibits thereto and including the information contained in the Prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act and deemed by virtue of Rule 430A under the Securities Act to be part of the Initial Registration Statement at the time it became effective for purposes of Section 11 of the Securities Act (the “**Effective Time**”), as such section applies to the respective Underwriters, is hereinafter collectively called the “**Registration Statement**.” If the Company files a Rule 462(b) Registration Statement which becomes effective prior to the Closing Date, then any reference herein to the term “Registration Statement” shall be deemed to include such Rule 462(b) Registration Statement. The final prospectus, in the form filed pursuant to and within the time limits described in Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, is hereinafter called the “**Prospectus**.”

(b) **General Disclosure Package.** As of the Applicable Time (as defined below) and as of each Closing Date, as the case may be, neither (i) the Pricing Prospectus (as defined below) and the information included on Schedule B hereto, all considered together (collectively, the “**General Disclosure Package**”), nor (ii) any individual Written Testing-the-Waters Communication (as defined below), when considered together with the General Disclosure Package, included or will include any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or will omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided, however, that the Company makes no representations or warranties as to information contained in or omitted from the Pricing Prospectus in reliance upon, and in conformity with, written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of any Underwriter specifically for inclusion therein, which information the parties hereto agree is limited to the Underwriters’ Information (as defined in Section 18). As used in this paragraph and elsewhere in this Agreement:

“**Applicable Time**” means 5:00 P.M., New York time, on the date of this Agreement or such other time as agreed to by the Company and the Representative.

“**Pricing Prospectus**” means the Preliminary Prospectus relating to the Public Units, Public Shares and Public Warrants that is included in the Registration Statement immediately prior to the Applicable Time.

“**Written Testing-the-Waters Communication**” means any Testing-the-Waters Communication (as defined below) that is a written communication within the meaning of Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

(c) **No Stop Orders; No Material Misstatements.** No order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued by the Commission, and no proceeding for that purpose or pursuant to Section 8A of the Securities Act has been instituted or threatened by the Commission, and each Preliminary Prospectus, at the time of filing thereof, conformed in all material respects to the requirements of the Securities Act and the Rules and Regulations, and did not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided, however, that the Company makes no representations or warranties as to information contained in or omitted from any Preliminary Prospectus, in reliance upon, and in conformity with, written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of any Underwriter specifically for inclusion therein, which information the parties hereto agree is limited to the Underwriters’ Information.

(d) Registration Statement and Prospectus Contents. As of the Effective Time, the Registration Statement complied in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Rules and Regulations and did not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading; as of the Applicable Time, the Preliminary Prospectus complied in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act (including Section 10(a) of the Securities Act) and the Rules and Regulations and did not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; as of the Applicable Time, the General Disclosure Package did not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; the Prospectus will comply, as of its date and at each Closing Date, in all material respects, with the requirements of the Securities Act (including Section 10(a) of the Securities Act) and the Rules and Regulations and, as of the date the Prospectus is filed with the Commission, and at each Closing Date, the Prospectus will not include an untrue statement of material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided, however, that the foregoing representations and warranties in this paragraph (d) shall not apply to information contained in or omitted from the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, in reliance upon, and in conformity with, written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of any Underwriter specifically for inclusion therein, which information the parties hereto agree is limited to the Underwriters' Information.

(e) No Free Writing Prospectus. The Company has not disseminated any writing materials which may be deemed a "free writing prospectus" under the Rules and Regulations.

(f) Distribution of Offering Materials. The Company has not, directly or indirectly, distributed and will not distribute any offering material in connection with the Offering other than any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus and other materials, if any, permitted under the Securities Act.

(g) Emerging Growth Company. From the time of the initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement to the Commission (or, if earlier, the first date on which the Company engaged directly or through any person authorized to act on its behalf in any Testing-the-Waters Communications) through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act (an "**Emerging Growth Company**"). "**Testing-the-Waters Communication**" means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the Securities Act.

(h) Ineligible Issuer. The Company is an "ineligible issuer", as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act, and was such an "ineligible issuer" as of the eligibility determination date, within the meaning of Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act, for the offering of the Public Units.

(i) Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company (a) has not alone engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communication other than Testing-the-Waters Communications with the consent of the Representative with entities that are qualified institutional buyers within the meaning of Rule 144A under the Securities Act and (b) has not authorized anyone other than the Representative to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company reconfirms that the Representative has been authorized to act on its behalf in undertaking Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company has not distributed any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications other than those listed on Schedule C hereto.



(j) Organization and Good Standing. The Company has been duly organized and is validly existing as corporation in good standing in the State of Delaware. The Company is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation in each jurisdiction in which its ownership or lease of property or the conduct of its business requires such qualification and has all power and authority (corporate or other) necessary to own or hold its property and to conduct its business as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, and to enter into the this Agreement and the Other Transaction Agreements, and to carry out the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, except where the failure to so qualify or have such power or authority would not (i) have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, general affairs, management, financial position, stockholders' equity, results of operations or prospects of the Company or (ii) impair in any material respect the ability of the Company to perform its obligations under this Agreement and the Other Transaction Agreements or (iii) impair in any material respect the ability of the Company to consummate any transactions contemplated by this Agreement, the Other Transaction Agreements, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (any such effect as described in clauses (i), (ii) or (iii), a "**Material Adverse Effect**"). The Company has no subsidiaries. The Company does not own, directly or indirectly, any shares of stock or other equity interests or long-term debt securities of any corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, association or other entity.

(k) Properties. The Company owns or leases all such properties as are necessary to conduct its business as currently conducted, and as proposed to be conducted and described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(l) Offering Documents. This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company. Each of the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, the Sponsor Promissory Note and the Administrative Services Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, and is a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except, in each case, as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and by equitable principles of general applicability. Each of the Founder Subscription Agreements and the Unit Purchase Agreements has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company (and, to the Company's knowledge, the Sponsor to the extent a party thereto) and is a valid and binding agreement of the Company (and, to the Company's knowledge, the Sponsor to the extent a party thereto), enforceable against the Company (and, to the Company's knowledge, the Sponsor to the extent a party thereto) in accordance with its terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and by equitable principles of general applicability. Each of the Registration Rights Agreement and the Insider Letter has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company (and, to the Company's knowledge, the Sponsor and each director, director nominee and officer of the Company) and is a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and by equitable principles of general applicability.

(m) The Offering Securities. The Units have been duly and validly authorized and, when issued and delivered against payment therefor as provided herein or in the Unit Purchase Agreements, as applicable, will be duly and validly issued, will be free of statutory and contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or similar rights, will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and by equitable principles of general applicability. The certificates for the Units are in due and proper form. The shares of Common Stock included in the Units have been duly and validly authorized and, when issued and delivered against payment therefor as provided herein or in the Unit Purchase Agreements, as applicable, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable and free of statutory and contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal and similar rights. The Warrants included in the Units, when executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in the manner set forth in the Warrant Agreement against payment therefor as provided herein or in the Unit Purchase Agreements, as applicable, will be duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and by equitable principles of general applicability. The shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants included in the Units have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance upon exercise of the Warrants and, when issued and delivered against payment therefor pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable; the holders of such Common Stock are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; such shares of Common Stock are not and will not be subject to any statutory or contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or similar rights; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and delivery of such Common Stock (other than the issuance and delivery to be made upon exercise of the Warrants and payment therefor pursuant to the Warrant Agreement) has been duly and validly taken.

(n) Capitalization. The Company has an authorized capitalization as set forth under the heading "Capitalization" in the Pricing Prospectus, and all of the issued shares of capital stock of the Company (including the founder shares) have been duly and validly authorized and issued, are fully paid and non-assessable, have been issued in compliance with federal and state securities laws, and conform to the description thereof contained in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. No securities of the Company have been sold by the Company or by or on behalf of, or for the benefit of, any person or persons controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, since the date of the Company's formation, except as disclosed in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. All of the Company's options, warrants and other rights to purchase or exchange any securities for shares of the Company's capital stock, if any, have been duly authorized and validly issued, were issued in compliance with federal and state securities laws and conform to the description thereof contained in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. None of the outstanding shares of Common Stock were issued in violation of any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or other similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities of the Company. As of the date set forth in the General Disclosure Package, there were no authorized or outstanding shares of capital stock, options, warrants, preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or other rights to purchase, or equity or debt securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for, any capital stock of the Company other than those described above or accurately described in the General Disclosure Package. Since such date, the Company has not issued any securities, other than those described in the General Disclosure Package.

(o) No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and each of the Other Transaction Agreements, and the issue and sale of the Units and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby will not (with or without notice or lapse of time or both) (i) conflict with or result in a breach or violation of any of the terms or provisions of, constitute a default or a Debt Repayment Triggering Event (as defined below) under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, encumbrance, security interest, claim or charge upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company is subject, (ii) result in any violation of the provisions of the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation or by-laws of the Company or (iii) result in the violation of any law, statute, rule, regulation, judgment, order or decree of any federal, state, local or foreign governmental or regulatory commission, board, body, authority or agency, or any self-regulatory organization or other non-governmental regulatory authority (including the rules and regulations of the Nasdaq Capital Market (the "*Exchange*")), having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its properties or assets except, in the case of clauses (i) and (iii) above, for any such conflict, breach, violation or default that would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. A "*Debt Repayment Triggering Event*" means any event or condition that gives, or with the giving of notice or lapse of time would give the holder of any note, debenture or other evidence of indebtedness (or any person acting on such holder's behalf) the right to require the repurchase, redemption or repayment of all or a portion of such indebtedness by the Company.

(p) No Consents Required. No approval, authorization, consent or order of or filing with any federal, state, local or foreign governmental or regulatory commission, board, body, authority or agency, or any self-regulatory organization or other non-governmental regulatory authority (including the Exchange), or approval of the stockholders of the Company, is required in connection with the issuance and sale of the Units or in connection with the transactions contemplated in this Agreement or the Other Transaction Agreements, or the consummation by the Company of the transactions contemplated hereby or thereby, other than (i) registration of the Public Units, Public Shares and Public Warrants under the Securities Act, which has been effected (or, with respect to any registration statement to be filed hereunder pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, will be effected in accordance herewith), (ii) any necessary qualification under the securities or blue sky laws of the various jurisdictions in which the Public Units are being offered by the Underwriters, (iii) under the applicable rules of the Financial Institutions Regulatory Authority ("*FINRA*"), (iv) any listing applications and related consents or any notices required by the Exchange in the ordinary course of the offering of the Public Units, (v) filings with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act and (vi) any such other required approvals as have been obtained prior to the date hereof.

(q) No Preemptive Rights. Except as described in the Registration Statement (excluding the exhibits thereto), each Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, (i) no person has the right, contractual or otherwise, to cause the Company to issue or sell to it any Units or shares of any other capital stock or other equity interests of the Company, (ii) no person has any preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or other rights to purchase any Units or shares of any other capital stock or of other equity interests in the Company and (iii) no person has the right to act as an underwriter or as a financial advisor to the Company in connection with the offer and sale of the Public Units; no person has the right, contractual or otherwise, to cause the Company to register under the Securities Act any Units or shares of any other capital stock or of other equity interests in the Company or to include any such shares or interests in the Registration Statement or the offering contemplated thereby.

(r) Independent Auditors. WithumSmith+Brown, PC, who have certified certain financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, is an independent registered public accounting firm with respect to the Company within the meaning of Article 2-01 of Regulation S-X and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (the “*PCAOB*”).

(s) Financial Statements. The financial statements, together with the related notes, included in the General Disclosure Package, the Prospectus and in the Registration Statement fairly present the financial position and the results of operations and changes in financial position of the Company at the respective dates or for the respective periods therein specified. Such statements and related notes have been prepared in accordance with the generally accepted accounting principles in the United States (“*GAAP*”) applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods involved except as may be set forth in the related notes included in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. The financial statements, together with the related notes, included in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus comply in all material respects with Regulation S-X. No other financial statements or supporting schedules or exhibits are required by Regulation S-X to be described or included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus. Except as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company is not party to any off-balance sheet transactions, agreements or other contractual arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a material current or future effect on the Company’s financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues, expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources. Except as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company does not own an interest in any corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other entity. Any summary and selected financial data included in the General Disclosure Package, the Prospectus and the Registration Statement fairly present the information shown therein as at the respective dates and for the respective periods specified and are derived from the financial statements set forth in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Prospectus and the Prospectus and other financial information.

(t) No Material Adverse Change. Subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, in each case excluding any amendments or supplements to the foregoing made after the execution of this Agreement, there has not been, (i) any material adverse change, or any development involving a prospective material adverse change, in the business, properties, management, financial condition or results of operation of the Company, (ii) any transaction with is material to the Company, (iii) any obligation or liability, direct or contingent (including any off-balance sheet obligations), incurred by the Company, which is material to the Company, (iv) any material loss or interference with the business of the Company from fire, explosion, flood or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, or from any action, order or decree of any court or governmental or regulatory authority, (v) any change in the capital stock or outstanding indebtedness of the Company or (vi) any dividend or distribution of any kind declared, set aside for payment, paid or made by the Company on any class of capital stock.

(u) Legal Proceedings. Except as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there is no legal or governmental proceeding pending to which the Company is a party or of which any property or assets of the Company is the subject that is required to be described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus and is not described therein, or which, singularly or in the aggregate, if determined adversely to effect the Company, could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; and no such proceedings are threatened or, to the Company’s knowledge after reasonable investigation and due diligence inquiry (“*Knowledge*”), contemplated by governmental or regulatory authorities or threatened by others.

(v) No Violation or Default. The Company is not (i) in violation of its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation or by-laws, (ii) in default in any respect, and no event has occurred which, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default, in the due performance or observance of any term, covenant or condition contained in any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement, lease or other agreement or instrument to which it is a party or by which it is bound or to which any of its property or assets is subject or (iii) in violation in any respect of any law, ordinance, governmental rule, regulation or court order, decree or judgment to which it or its property or assets may be subject except, in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii) above, for any such violation or default that would not, singularly or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect.

(w) Licenses or Permits. The Company possesses all licenses, certificates, authorizations and permits issued by, and has made all declarations and filings with, the appropriate federal, state, local and foreign governmental or regulatory commissions, boards, bodies, authorities and agencies that are necessary for the ownership or lease of its property and the conduct of its businesses as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus (collectively, the “**Governmental Permits**”) except where any failures to possess or make the same would not, singularly or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company is in compliance with all such Governmental Permits; all such Governmental Permits are valid and in full force and effect, except where the validity or failure to be in full force and effect would not, singularly or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received notification of any revocation, modification, suspension, termination or invalidation (or proceedings related thereto) of any such Governmental Permit and the Company has no reason to believe that any such Governmental Permit will not be renewed.

(x) Investment Company Act. The Company is not and, after giving effect to the offering of the Public Units and the Private Placement Units and the application of the proceeds thereof as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, will not be, required to register as an “investment company” or an entity “controlled” by an “investment company” within the meaning of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “**Investment Company Act**”), and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

(y) No Stabilization. Neither the Company nor, to the Company’s Knowledge, any of its officers, directors or affiliates has taken or will take, directly or indirectly, any action designed or intended to stabilize or manipulate the price of any security of the Company, or which caused or resulted in, or which might in the future reasonably be expected to cause or result in, stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company.

(z) Intellectual Property. The Company owns or possesses the valid right to use all (i) valid and enforceable trademarks, trademark registrations, service marks, service mark registrations, Internet domain name registrations, copyrights, copyright registrations, licenses and trade secret rights (“**Intellectual Property Rights**”) and (ii) service marks, trade names, Internet domain names and other intellectual property (collectively, “**Intellectual Property Assets**”) necessary to conduct its business as currently conducted, and as proposed to be conducted and described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. To the Company’s Knowledge, the Company’s business as now conducted does not give rise to any infringement of, any misappropriation of, or other violation of, any valid and enforceable Intellectual Property Rights or any valid Intellectual Property Assets of any other person which is reasonably likely to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(aa) Real and Personal Property. The Company does not own any real property; the property described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus as being available for use by the Company is available for use thereby under a valid agreement enforceable by the Company.

(bb) No Labor Dispute. There is (A) no significant unfair labor practice complaint pending against the Company nor, to the Company’s Knowledge, threatened against it, before the National Labor Relations Board, any state or local labor relation board or any foreign labor relations board, and no significant grievance or significant arbitration proceeding arising out of or under any collective bargaining agreement is so pending against the Company, or, to the Company’s Knowledge, threatened against it and (B) no labor disturbance by or dispute with, employees of the Company exists or, to the Company’s Knowledge, is contemplated or threatened, and the Company is not aware of any existing or imminent labor disturbance by the employees of any of its principal suppliers, manufacturers, customers or contractors, that could reasonably be expected, singularly or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company is not aware that any key employee or significant group of employees of the Company plans to terminate employment with the Company.

(cc) Compliance with ERISA. No “prohibited transaction” (as defined in Section 406 of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, including the regulations and published interpretations thereunder (“**ERISA**”), or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended from time to time (the **Code**)) or “accumulated funding deficiency” (as defined in Section 302 of ERISA) or any of the events set forth in Section 4043(b) of ERISA (other than events with respect to which the thirty (30)-day notice requirement under Section 4043 of ERISA has been waived) has occurred or could reasonably be expected to occur with respect to any employee benefit plan of the Company which could, singularly or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. Each employee benefit plan of the Company is in compliance in all material respects with applicable law, including ERISA and the Code. The Company has not incurred and could not reasonably be expected to incur liability under Title IV of ERISA with respect to the termination of, or withdrawal from, any pension plan (as defined in ERISA).

(dd) Environmental Laws and Hazardous Materials. The Company is in compliance with all foreign, federal, state and local rules, laws and regulations relating to the use, treatment, storage and disposal of hazardous or toxic substances or waste and protection of health and safety or the environment which are applicable to its business (“**Environmental Laws**”). There has been no storage, generation, transportation, handling, treatment, disposal, discharge, emission, or other release of any kind of toxic or other wastes or other hazardous substances by, due to, or caused by the Company (or, to the Company’s Knowledge, any other entity for whose acts or omissions the Company is or may otherwise be liable) upon any of the property now or previously owned or leased by the Company, or upon any other property, in violation of any law, statute, ordinance, rule, regulation, order, judgment, decree or permit or which would, under any law, statute, ordinance, rule (including rule of common law), regulation, order, judgment, decree or permit, give rise to any liability; and there has been no disposal, discharge, emission or other release of any kind onto such property or into the environment surrounding such property of any toxic or other wastes or other hazardous substances with respect to which the Company has Knowledge.

(ee) Taxes. The Company (i) has timely filed all necessary federal, state, local and foreign tax returns, and all such returns were true, complete and correct, (ii) has paid all federal, state, local and foreign taxes, for which it is liable, including all sales and use taxes and all taxes which the Company is obligated to withhold from amounts owing to employees, creditors and third parties and (iii) does not have any tax deficiency or claims outstanding or assessed or, to its Knowledge, proposed against it, except those, in each of the cases described in clauses (i), (ii) and (iii) above, that would not, singularly or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect.

(ff) Insurance. The Company carries, or is covered by, insurance in such amounts and covering such risks as is adequate for the conduct of its business and the value of its property. The Company has no reason to believe that it will not be able to renew any existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received written notice from any insurer, agent of such insurer or the broker of the Company that any material capital improvements or any other material expenditures (other than premium payments) are required or necessary to be made in order to continue such insurance.

(gg) Accounting Controls. The Company maintains a system of “internal control over financial reporting” (as such term is defined in Rule 13a-15(f) of the General Rules and Regulations under the Exchange Act (the “**Exchange Act Rules**”)) that complies with the requirements of the Exchange Act and has been designed by its principal executive and principal financial officers, or under their supervision, to provide reasonable assurances that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management’s general or specific authorizations; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. The Company’s internal control over financial reporting is effective. Except as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there has been (A) no material weakness in the Company’s internal control over financial reporting (whether or not remediated) and (B) no change in the Company’s internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company’s internal control over financial reporting.

(hh) Disclosure Controls. The Company maintains “disclosure controls and procedures” (as such is defined in Rule 13a-15(e) of the Exchange Act Rules) that comply with the requirements of the Exchange Act; such disclosure controls and procedures have been designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in reports that it files or submit under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Commission’s rules and forms, including controls and procedures designed to ensure that such information is accumulated and communicated to the Company’s management to allow timely decisions regarding disclosures. The Company has conducted evaluations of the effectiveness of its disclosure controls as required by Rule 13a-15 of the Exchange Act.

(ii) Minute Books. The minute books of the Company have been made available to the Underwriters and counsel for the Underwriters, and such books (i) contain a complete summary of all meetings and actions of the board of directors (including each board committee) and stockholders of the Company since the time of its incorporation through the date of the latest meeting and action and (ii) accurately in all material respects reflect all transactions referred to in such minutes.

(jj) No Undisclosed Relationships. No relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company on the one hand, and the directors, officers, stockholders (or analogous interest holders), customers or suppliers of the Company or any of its affiliates on the other hand, which is required to be described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and which is not so described.

(kk) No Registration Rights. No person has the right to require registration of shares of Common Stock or other securities of the Company because of the filing or effectiveness of the Registration Statement or otherwise, except for persons who have expressly waived such right in writing or who have been given timely and proper written notice and have failed to exercise such right within the time or times required under the terms and conditions of such right. Except as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there are no persons with registration rights or similar rights to have any securities registered by the Company or any of its subsidiaries under the Securities Act.

(ll) Margin Rules. The application of the proceeds received by the Company from the issuance, sale and delivery of the Public Units as described in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus will not violate Regulation T, U or X of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve system or any other regulation of such Board of Governors.

(mm) No Broker's Fees. The Company is not a party to any contract, agreement or understanding with any person (other than this Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement) that would give rise to a valid claim against the Company or the Underwriters for a brokerage commission, finder's fee or like payment in connection with the Offering and sale of the Public Units or any transaction contemplated by this Agreement, the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus.

(nn) Forward-Looking Statements. No forward-looking statement (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act) contained in either the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus has been made or reaffirmed without a reasonable basis or has been disclosed other than in good faith.

(oo) Listing. The Public Units, the Public Shares and the Public Warrants have been approved for listing on the Exchange subject to notice of issuance. A registration statement has been filed on Form 8-A pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act, which registration statement complies in all material respects with the Exchange Act and the Exchange Act Rules and is effective as of the date hereof.

(pp) Sarbanes-Oxley Act. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or, to the Company's Knowledge, any of the Company's officers or directors, in their capacities as such, to comply with any provision of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and the rules and regulations promulgated in connection therewith (the "**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**"), including Section 402 related to loans, to the extent such provisions and rules and regulations are applicable.

(qq) No Unlawful Payments. Neither the Company nor, to the Company's Knowledge, any employee or agent of the Company, has (i) used any corporate funds for unlawful contributions, gifts, entertainment or other unlawful expenses relating to political activity, (ii) made any unlawful payment to foreign or domestic government officials or employees or to foreign or domestic political parties or campaigns from corporate funds, (iii) violated any provision of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended or (iv) made any other unlawful payment.

(rr) Statistical and Market Data. The statistical and market related data included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate, and such data agree with the sources from which they are derived.

(ss) Compliance with Money Laundering Laws. The operations of the Company are and have been conducted at all times in material compliance with all applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements, including those of the Bank Secrecy Act, as amended by Title III of the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001 (USA PATRIOT Act), and the applicable anti-money laundering statutes of jurisdictions where the Company conducts business, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any governmental agency (collectively, the “**Anti-Money Laundering Laws**”), and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company with respect to the Anti-Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the Knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(tt) Compliance with OFAC.

- (A) Neither the Company nor any director, officer or employee thereof, nor, to the Company’s Knowledge, any agent, affiliate or representative of the Company, is an individual or entity (“**Person**”) that is, or is owned or controlled by a Person that is: (i) the subject of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. Department of Treasury’s Office of Foreign Assets Control (“**OFAC**”), the United Nations Security Council (“**UNSC**”), the European Union (“**EU**”), Her Majesty’s Treasury (“**HMT**”), or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, “**Sanctions**”), nor (ii) located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions (including the Crimea region, Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan and Syria).
- (B) The Company will not, directly or indirectly, use the proceeds of the Offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any other Person: (i) to fund or facilitate any activities or business of or with any Person or in any country or territory that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject of Sanctions; or in any other manner that will result in a violation of Sanctions by any Person (including any Person participating in the Offering, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise).
- (C) The Company has not knowingly engaged in, is not now knowingly engaged in, and will not engage in, any dealings or transactions with any Person, or in any country or territory, that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject of Sanctions.

(uu) FINRA Matters. Neither the Company nor any of its affiliates (within the meaning of FINRA Rule 5121(f)(1)) directly or indirectly controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, or is an associated person (within the meaning of Article I, Section 1(ee) of the By-laws of FINRA) of, any person that is a member of FINRA (a “**FINRA Member**”), other than as described on Schedule D hereof.

(vv) Except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, during the period beginning 180 days prior to the first confidential submission of the Registration Statement with the Commission and ending on the effective date of the Registration Statement, the Company has not made any direct or indirect payments (in cash, securities or any other “item of value” as defined in FINRA Rule 5110(c)(3)), nor has it entered into any arrangements, contracts, agreements or understandings relating to the payment to: (i) any person, as a finder’s fee, consulting, investment banking, financial advisory, origination fee or otherwise, in consideration of such person raising capital for the Company or introducing to the Company persons who raised or provided capital to the Company; (ii) any FINRA Member; or (iii) any person that, to the Company’s knowledge, has any direct or indirect affiliation or association with any FINRA Member, other than payments to the Underwriters pursuant to this Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement.

(ww) Except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, no person to whom securities of the Company or the Sponsor have been privately sold during the period beginning 180 days prior to the initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement with the Commission has, to the Company's knowledge, any relationship or affiliation or association with any FINRA Member intending to participate in the Offering. As used in this Agreement, the term "**FINRA Member intending to participate in the Offering**" includes any associated person of a FINRA Member intending to participate in the Offering, any associated person of a FINRA Member who is among such associated person's immediate family and any affiliate of a FINRA Member intending to participate in the Offering.

(xx) To the Company's knowledge, no FINRA Member intending to participate in the Offering has a conflict of interest with the Company. For this purpose, a "**conflict of interest**" exists if, at the time of the FINRA Member's participation in the Offering, any of the following applies: (A) the securities are to be issued by the FINRA Member; (B) the Company controls, is controlled by or is under common control with the FINRA Member or the FINRA Member's associated persons; (C) at least 5% of the net proceeds of the Offering, not including underwriting compensation, are intended to be (i) used to reduce or retire the balance of a loan or credit facility extended by the FINRA Member, its affiliates and its associated persons, in the aggregate, or (ii) otherwise directed to the FINRA Member, its affiliates and associated persons, in the aggregate; or (D) as a result of the Offering and any transactions contemplated at the time of the Offering: (i) the FINRA Member will be an affiliate of the Company, (ii) the FINRA Member will become publicly owned or (iii) the Company will become a FINRA Member or form a broker-dealer subsidiary.

(yy) **No Integration**. The Company has not made any offer or sale of any securities which are required to be "integrated" pursuant to the Securities Act or the Rules or Regulations with the offer and sale of the Public Units or any of their underlying securities pursuant to the Registration Statement.

(zz) **Questionnaires**. To the Knowledge of the Company, all information contained in the questionnaires (the "**Questionnaires**") completed by the Sponsor and the Company's officers, directors and director nominees and provided to the Underwriters is true and correct and the Company has not become aware of any information that would cause the information disclosed in the Questionnaires completed by the Sponsor or the Company's officers, directors and director nominees to become inaccurate and incorrect.

(aaa) **No Acquisition Targets**. Prior to the date hereof, the Company has not identified any acquisition target and has not, nor to its Knowledge, has anyone on its behalf, initiated any substantive discussions, directly or indirectly, with any potential target for the Company's initial Business Combination.

Any certificate signed by or on behalf of the Company and delivered to the Representative or to counsel for the Underwriters shall be deemed to be a representation and warranty by the Company to each Underwriter as to the matters covered thereby.

3. **PURCHASE, SALE AND DELIVERY OF OFFERED SECURITIES**. On the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements herein contained, but subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell to the Underwriters, and the Underwriters agree, severally and not jointly, to purchase from the Company the respective number of Firm Units set forth opposite the names of the Underwriters in Schedule A hereto. The Company is advised by the Representative that the Underwriters intend (i) to make a public offering of their respective portions of the Firm Units as soon after the effective date of the Registration Statement as in the Representative's judgment is advisable and (ii) initially to offer the Firm Units upon the terms set forth in the Prospectus.

The purchase price per share to be paid by the Underwriters to the Company for the Firm Units will be \$9.80 per Unit (the "**Purchase Price**").



The Company will deliver the Firm Units to the Representative for the respective accounts of the several Underwriters, through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company or, at the election of the Representative, in the form of definitive certificates, in each such case, issued in such names and in such denominations as the Representative may direct by notice in writing to the Company given at or prior to 12:00 Noon, New York time, on the business day immediately preceding the Closing Date against payment of the aggregate Purchase Price therefor by wire transfer in federal (same day) funds to the Trust Account and such other account(s) as may be specified by the Company. Time shall be of the essence, and delivery at the time and place specified pursuant to this Agreement is a condition of the obligations of each Underwriter hereunder. The time and date of the delivery and closing shall be at 10:00 A.M., New York time, on Monday, February 11, 2019, in accordance with Rule 15c6-1 of the Exchange Act. The time and date of such payment and delivery are herein referred to as the “**Initial Closing Date**”. The Initial Closing Date and the location of delivery of, and the form of payment for, the Firm Units may be varied by agreement between the Company and the Representative.

The Company and the Underwriters agree that 250,000 of the Firm Units to be purchased by the Underwriters (the “Reserved Units”) shall be reserved for sale by the Underwriters to designees of the Company as part of the distribution of the Firm Units, subject to the terms of this Agreement, the applicable rules, regulations and interpretations of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”) and all other applicable laws, rules and regulations. The Company solely determined, without any direct or indirect participation by the Underwriters, who will purchase the Reserved Units. To the extent that such Reserved Units are not orally confirmed for purchase by 9:00 A.M. (New York City time) on the first business day after the date of this Agreement, the Reserved Units may be offered to the public as part of the public offering contemplated hereby. The Company, in the event the Representative elects to have the Underwriters take delivery of definitive certificates instead of delivery from the Company of the certificates through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, shall make certificates for the Firm Units available to the Representative for examination on behalf of the Underwriters in New York, New York at least one (1) full business day prior to the Initial Closing Date.

In addition, the Company hereby grants to the several Underwriters the option (the “**Over-Allotment Option**”) to purchase, and upon the basis of the representations and warranties and subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Underwriters shall have the right to purchase, severally and not jointly, from the Company, ratably in accordance with the number of Firm Units to be purchased by each of them, all or a portion of the Optional Units as may be necessary to cover over-allotments made in connection with the offering of the Firm Units, at the same purchase price per Firm Unit to be paid by the Underwriters to the Company. The Over-Allotment Option may be exercised by the Representative on behalf of the several Underwriters at any time, and from time to time, on or before the forty-fifth (45th) day following the date of this Agreement, by written notice to the Company, setting forth the number of Optional Units to be purchased by the Underwriters and the date and time for delivery of and payment for the Optional Units. The number of Optional Units to be sold to each Underwriter shall be the number which bears the same proportion to the aggregate number of Optional Units being purchased as the number of Firm Units set forth opposite the name of such Underwriter on Schedule A hereto bears to the total number of Firm Units (subject, in each case, to such adjustment as the Representative may determine to eliminate fractional shares).

Each date and time for delivery of and payment for Optional Units (which may be the Initial Closing Date, but not earlier) is herein called the “**Option Closing Date**” and shall in no event be earlier than two (2) business days nor later than five (5) business days after written notice of exercise is given. Each Option Closing Date and the Initial Closing Date are herein called the “**Closing Dates**,” or each a “**Closing Date**.”

The Company will deliver the Optional Units to the Representative for the respective accounts of the several Underwriters through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company or, at the election of the Representative, in the form of definitive certificates, in each such case, issued in such names and in such denominations as the Representative may direct by notice in writing to the Company given at or prior to 12:00 Noon, New York time, on the business day immediately preceding the Option Closing Date against payment of the aggregate Purchase Price therefor by wire transfer in federal (same day) funds to the Trust Account. Time shall be of the essence, and delivery at the time and place specified pursuant to this Agreement is a further condition of the obligations of each Underwriter hereunder. The Company, in the event the Representative elects to have the Underwriters take delivery of definitive certificates instead of delivery from the Company of the certificates through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, shall make the certificates for the Optional Units available to the Representative for examination on behalf of the Underwriters in New York, New York not later than 10:00 A.M., New York Time, at least one (1) full business day prior to the Option Closing Date. The Option Closing Date and the location of delivery of, and the form of payment for, the Optional Units may be varied by agreement between the Company and the Representative.

4. *FURTHER AGREEMENTS*. The Company agrees with the several Underwriters:

(a) Required Filings; Amendments or Supplements; Notice to the Representative. To prepare the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, if necessary, in a form approved by the Representative and file such Rule 462(b) Registration Statement with the Commission by 10:00 P.M., New York time, on the date hereof, and the Company shall at the time of filing either pay to the Commission the filing fee for the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement or give irrevocable instructions for the payment of such fee pursuant to Rule 111(b) under the Securities Act; to prepare the Prospectus in a form approved by the Representative containing information previously omitted at the time of effectiveness of the Registration Statement in reliance on Rules 430A, 430B or 430C under the Securities Act and to file such Prospectus pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act not later than the second (2nd) business day following the execution and delivery of this Agreement or, if applicable, such earlier time as may be required by the Securities Act; to notify the Representative immediately of the Company's intention to file or prepare any supplement or amendment to the Registration Statement or to the Prospectus and to make no amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or to the Prospectus to which the Representative shall reasonably object by notice to the Company after a reasonable period to review; to advise the Representative, promptly after it receives notice thereof, of the time when any amendment to the Registration Statement has been filed or becomes effective or any supplement to the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or any amended Prospectus or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication has been filed and to furnish the Underwriters with copies thereof; to file promptly all material required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rules 433(d) or 163(b)(2) under the Securities Act, as the case may be; to advise the Representative, promptly after it receives notice thereof, of the issuance by the Commission of any stop order or of any order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, of the suspension of the qualification of the Public Units, Public Shares or Public Warrants for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose, or of any request by the Commission for the amending or supplementing of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or for additional information including any request for information concerning any Testing-the-Waters Communication; and, in the event of the issuance of any stop order or of any order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or suspending any such qualification, to promptly use its best efforts to obtain the withdrawal of such order.

(b) Emerging Growth Company. To promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the later of (a) the completion of the distribution of the Public Units within the meaning of the Securities Act and (b) completion of the Lock-Up Period (as defined below).

If at any time following the distribution of any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representative and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication to eliminate or correct such untrue statement or omission.

(c) Ongoing Compliance. If at any time prior to the date when a prospectus relating to the Public Units is required to be delivered (or in lieu thereof, the notice referred to in Rule 173(a) under the Securities Act) any event occurs or condition exists as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include any untrue statement of a material fact, or omit to state any material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made when the Prospectus is delivered (or in lieu thereof, the notice referred to in Rule 173(a) under the Securities Act), not misleading, or if it is necessary at any time to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or the Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, to promptly notify the Representative thereof and upon its request to prepare an appropriate amendment or supplement in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative which will correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance and to use its best efforts to have any amendment to the Registration Statement declared effective as soon as possible. The Company will furnish without charge to each Underwriter and to any dealer in securities as many copies as the Representative may from time to time reasonably request of such amendment or supplement. In case any Underwriter is required to deliver a prospectus (or in lieu thereof, the notice referred to in Rule 173(a) under the Securities Act) relating to the Public Units, the Company upon the request of the Representative will prepare promptly an amended or supplemented Prospectus as may be necessary to permit compliance with the requirements of Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act and deliver to such Underwriter as many copies as such Underwriter may request of such amended or supplemented Prospectus complying with Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act.

(d) Amendment to General Disclosure Package. If the General Disclosure Package is being used to solicit offers to buy the Public Units at a time when the Prospectus is not yet available to prospective purchasers and any event shall occur as a result of which, in the judgment of the Company or in the reasonable opinion of the Underwriters, it becomes necessary to amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then prevailing, not misleading, or to make the statements therein not conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement then on file and not superseded or modified, or if it is necessary at any time to amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package to comply with any law, to promptly prepare, file with the Commission (if required) and furnish to the Underwriters and any dealers an appropriate amendment or supplement to the General Disclosure Package.

(e) Delivery of Registration Statement. To the extent not publicly available on the Commission's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval system or any successor system ("**EDGAR**"), upon the request of the Representative, to furnish promptly to the Representative and to counsel for the Underwriters a signed copy of the Registration Statement as originally filed with the Commission, and of each amendment thereto filed with the Commission, including all consents and exhibits filed therewith.

(f) Delivery of Copies. Upon request of the Representative, to the extent not publicly available on EDGAR, to deliver promptly to the Representative in New York City such number of the following documents as the Representative shall reasonably request: (i) conformed copies of the Registration Statement as originally filed with the Commission (in each case excluding exhibits), (ii) each Preliminary Prospectus, (iii) the Prospectus (the delivery of the documents referred to in clauses (i), (ii) and (iii) of this paragraph (i) to be made not later than 10:00 A.M., New York time, on the business day following the execution and delivery of this Agreement), (iv) conformed copies of any amendment to the Registration Statement (excluding exhibits) and (v) any amendment or supplement to the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (the delivery of the documents referred to in clauses (iv) and (v) of this paragraph (i) to be made not later than 10:00 A.M., New York City time, on the business day following the date of such amendment or supplement).

(g) Earnings Statement. To make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but in any event not later than sixteen (16) months after the effective date of the Registration Statement (as defined in Rule 158(c) under the Securities Act), an earnings statement of the Company (which need not be audited) complying with Section 11(a) of the Securities Act (including, at the option of the Company, Rule 158 under the Securities Act); and to furnish to its security holders as soon as practicable after the end of each fiscal year an annual report (including a balance sheet and statements of income, stockholders' equity and cash flows of the Company certified by independent public accountants) and as soon as possible after each of the first three fiscal quarters of each fiscal year (beginning with the first fiscal quarter after the effective date of such Registration Statement), summary financial information of the Company for such quarter in reasonable detail.

(h) Blue Sky Compliance. To take promptly from time to time such actions as the Representative may reasonably request to qualify the Public Units and any of the underlying securities for offering and sale under the securities or Blue Sky laws of such jurisdictions (domestic or foreign) as the Representative may reasonably designate and to continue such qualifications in effect, and to comply with such laws, for so long as required to permit the offer and sale of Public Units and any of the underlying securities in such jurisdictions; provided that the Company shall not be obligated to (i) qualify as foreign corporation in any jurisdiction in which it is not so qualified, (ii) file a general consent to service of process in any jurisdiction or (iii) subject itself to taxation in any such jurisdiction if it is not otherwise so subject.

(i) Reports. Upon request, during the period of five (5) years from the date hereof, to deliver to each of the Underwriters, (i) as soon as they are available, copies of all reports or other communications (financial or other) furnished to security holders and (ii) as soon as they are available, copies of any reports and financial statements furnished or filed with the Commission or any national securities exchange on which the Public Units, Common Stock and Warrants are listed. However, so long as the Company is subject to the reporting requirements of either Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act and is timely filing reports on EDGAR, it is not required to furnish such reports or statements to the Underwriters.

(j) Lock-Up. During the period commencing on and including the date hereof and ending on and including the 180th day following the date of this Agreement, (the "Lock-Up Period") to not, without the prior written consent of the Representative (which consent may be withheld at the sole discretion of the Representative), directly or indirectly offer, sell (including any short sale), assign, transfer, pledge, contract to sell, establish an open "put equivalent position" within the meaning of Rule 16a-1(h) under the Exchange Act, or otherwise dispose of, or announce the offering of, or file any registration statement under the Securities Act in respect of, any Units, Common Stock, options, rights or warrants to acquire Common Stock or securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into Common Stock (other than is contemplated by this Agreement with respect to the Public Units) or publicly announce any intention to do any of the foregoing. The Company will cause the Founders and each of the Company's officers, directors, advisors and security holders prior to the Offering to furnish to the Representative, prior to the Initial Closing Date, the Insider Letter, which contains, among other things, "lock-up" restrictions on disposition of securities of the Company and the Company shall not release any such party from such "lock-up" restrictions without the prior written consent of the Representative (which consent may be withheld at the sole discretion of the Representative). Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may: (a) issue and sell the Private Placement Units, (b) issue and sell the Optional Units on exercise of the option provided for in Section 3 hereof, (c) register with the Commission pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement, in accordance with the terms of the Registration Rights Agreement, the resale of the Private Placement Units, the Founder Shares, the Private Placement Warrants and shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Units and the Private Placement Warrants and (d) issue securities in connection with a Business Combination; provided, further, that in no case shall the Company issue any Common Stock, Warrants or any options or other securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for Common Stock, or any shares of preferred stock, in each case, that participate in any manner in the Trust Account or that vote as a class with the Common Stock on a Business Combination.

(k) Release of Lock-Up. If the Representative, in its sole discretion, agrees to release or waive the lock-up restrictions set forth in the Insider Letter for a Founder or an executive officer, director or director nominee of the Company and provides the Company with notice of the impending release or waiver at least three (3) business days before the effective date of the release or waiver, the Company agrees to announce the impending release or waiver by a press release substantially in the form of Exhibit I hereto through a major news service at least two (2) business days before the effective date of the release or waiver.

(l) Delivery of SEC Correspondence. To supply the Underwriters with copies of all correspondence to and from, and all documents issued to and by, the Commission in connection with the registration of the Public Units, Public Shares and Public Warrants under the Securities Act or any of the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto or document incorporated by reference therein.

(m) Press Releases. Prior to the Initial Closing Date, not to issue any press release or other communication directly or indirectly or hold any press conference with respect to the Company, its condition, financial or otherwise, or earnings, business affairs or business prospects, without the prior consent of the Representative, unless in the judgment of the Company and its counsel, and after notification to the Representative, such press release or communication is required by law.

(n) Compliance with Regulation M. Until the Underwriters shall have notified the Company of the completion of the resale of the Public Units, not to, and use its reasonable best efforts to cause its affiliated purchasers (as defined in Regulation M under the Exchange Act) not to, either alone or with one or more other persons, bid for or purchase, for any account in which it or any of its affiliated purchasers has a beneficial interest, any Public Units, or attempt to induce any person to purchase any Public Units; and not to, and to use its reasonable best efforts to cause its affiliated purchasers not to, make bids or purchase for the purpose of creating actual, or apparent, active trading in or of raising the price of the Public Units.

(o) Registrar and Transfer Agent. To maintain, at its expense, a registrar and transfer agent for the Common Stock.

(p) Use of Proceeds. To apply the net proceeds from the sale of the Units as set forth in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the heading “Use of Proceeds”; except as disclosed in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company does not intend to use any of the proceeds from the sale of the Public Units hereunder to repay any outstanding debt owed to any affiliate of any Underwriter.

(q) Exchange Listing. To use its reasonable best efforts to list the Public Units, the Common Stock and the Public Warrants on the Exchange, and to maintain the listing of the Public Units, the Common Stock and the Public Warrants on the Exchange.

(r) Performance of Covenants and Satisfaction of Conditions. To use its reasonable best efforts to do and perform all things required to be done or performed under this Agreement by the Company prior to each Closing Date and to satisfy all conditions precedent to the delivery of the Firm Units and the Optional Units.

(s) Private Placement Funds. At least one (1) business day prior to the Initial Closing Date, if the Sponsor and Cowen Investments shall have caused all or a portion of the purchase price for the Private Placement Units to be purchased on the Initial Closing Date to be wired to the Company, to direct the trustee under the Trust Agreement to deposit all or a portion of such funds into the Trust Account and to hold such funds in escrow therein such that upon payment for the Public Units pursuant to this Agreement, the amount of cash in the Trust Account (without giving effect to any income earned thereon) will equal \$10.10 per Public Unit outstanding as of the Initial Closing Date. At least one business day prior to the time of any Option Closing Date, if the Sponsor and Cowen Investments shall have caused the purchase price for the Private Placement Units to be purchased on such Option Closing Date to be wired to the Company, to direct the trustee under the Trust Agreement to deposit such funds into the Trust Account and to hold such funds in escrow therein.

(t) Other Prospectuses. At any time at or after the executing of this Agreement, not to, directly or indirectly, offer or sell any Public Units, Public Shares or Public Warrants by means of any “prospectus” (within the meaning of the Securities Act), or use any “prospectus” (within the meaning of the Securities Act) in connection with the offer or sale of the Public Units, in each case other than the Prospectus.

(u) No Stabilization or Manipulation. Not to take, directly or indirectly, any action designed, or which will constitute, or has constituted, or might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any securities of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Public Units, Public Shares or Public Warrants.

(v) Exchange Act Registration. For a period of time commencing at the Effective Time and ending at least five (5) years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination, or until such earlier time at which Liquidation (as defined below) occurs, to use its reasonable best efforts to maintain the registration of the Public Units, Common Stock and Warrants under the provisions of the Exchange Act, except, in the case of the Public Units, after the completion of a Business Combination; the Company will not deregister the Public Units, Common Stock or Warrants under the Exchange Act (except, in the case of the Public Units, after the completion of a Business Combination) without the prior written consent of the Representative; “*Liquidation*” means the distributions of the Trust Account to the stockholders holding the Public Units (the “*Public Shareholders*”) in connection with the redemption of Common Stock held by such Public Shareholders pursuant to the terms of the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination.

(w) Audited Balance Sheet. To retain, as of the date hereof, its independent registered public accounting firm to audit the balance sheet of the Company (the “*Audited Balance Sheet*”) as of the time at which payment and delivery of the Firm Units are made (the “*Time of Purchase*”) reflecting the receipt by the Company of the proceeds of the Offering at the Time of Purchase; as soon as the Audited Balance Sheet becomes available, to promptly, but not later than four business days after the Time of Purchase, file a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission, which report shall contain the Company’s Audited Balance Sheet; additionally, upon the Company’s receipt of the proceeds from the exercise of all or any portion of the Over-Allotment Option provided for in Section 2 hereof, to promptly, but not later than four business days after the receipt of such proceeds, file a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission, which report shall disclose the Company’s sale of Optional Units and its receipt of the proceeds therefrom.

(x) Review of Financial Statements. For a period commencing on the Effective Time and ending at least five (5) years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs or the Common Stock and Public Warrants cease to be publicly traded, to, at its expense, cause its regularly engaged independent registered public accounting firm to review the Company's financial statements for each of the first three fiscal quarters prior to the announcement of quarterly financial information, the filing of the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q and the mailing, if any, of quarterly financial information to stockholders.

(y) Audit Committee. To cause its audit committee to review, on a quarterly basis, all payments made to (i) the Sponsor or any of the Company's officers or directors, or any of their respective affiliates, or (ii) any other Company affiliates.

(z) Reserved.

(aa) Warrant Agent. For a period commencing at the Effective Time and ending at least five (5) years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs or the Common Stock and Public Warrants cease to be publicly traded, to retain a warrant agent.

(bb) Transactions with Insiders. Not to consummate a Business Combination with any entity that is affiliated with the Sponsor or any of the Company's officers or directors unless it obtains an opinion from a qualified independent accounting firm or an independent investment banking firm which is a FINRA Member that such Business Combination is fair to the Company's stockholders from a financial point of view; other than as set forth in this subsection, the Company shall not pay the Sponsor or its affiliates or any of the Company's executive officers, directors or any of their respective affiliates any fees or compensation for services rendered to the Company prior to, or in connection with, the consummation of a Business Combination; provided, however, that such officers, directors and affiliates (i) may receive reimbursement for out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them related to identifying, investigating and consummating a Business Combination to the extent that such expenses do not exceed the amount of available proceeds not deposited in the Trust Account; (ii) may be repaid for loans as described in the Registration Statement; and (iii) may be paid \$10,000 per month for office space and general and administrative services pursuant to the Administrative Services Agreement. The Company's audit committee will review on a quarterly basis all payments made to the Sponsor, to the Company's officers or directors, or to the Company's or any of such other persons' respective affiliates.

(cc) FINRA Notification. For a period of ninety (90) days following the Effective Time, in the event any person (regardless of any FINRA affiliation or association) is engaged to assist the Company in its search for a merger candidate or to provide any other merger and acquisition services, or has provided or will provide any investment banking, financial, advisory and/or consulting services to the Company, to promptly provide to FINRA (via a FINRA submission), the Representative and counsel for the Underwriters a notification prior to entering into the agreement or transaction relating to a potential Business Combination: (i) the identity of the person providing any such services; (ii) complete details of all such services and copies of all agreements governing such services prior to entering into the agreement or transaction; and (iii) justification as to why the value received by any person for such services is not underwriting compensation for the Offering; the Company also agrees that proper disclosure of such arrangement or potential arrangement will be made in the tender offer materials or proxy statement, as applicable, which the Company may file in connection with the Business Combination for purposes of offering redemption of shares held by its stockholders for soliciting stockholder approval; as applicable. The Company shall advise FINRA, the Representative and counsel for the Underwriters if the Company is aware that any 5% or greater stockholder of the Company becomes an affiliate or associated person of a FINRA Member participating in the distribution of the Company's securities.

(dd) Proceeds to be Held in Trust. To cause the proceeds of the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Units that is held in the Trust Account to be invested only in United States government treasury bills with a maturity of one hundred and eighty (180) days or less or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 under the Investment Company Act as set forth in the Trust Agreement and disclosed in the Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus; to otherwise conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become subject to the Investment Company Act. During the period prior to the Company's initial Business Combination or the earlier Liquidation, the Company may instruct the trustee under the Trust Agreement to release from the Trust Account, solely from interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account, the amounts necessary to pay taxes; otherwise, all funds held in the Trust Account (including any interest income earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account (which interest shall be net of taxes payable)) will remain in the Trust Account until the earlier of the consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination or the Liquidation; provided, however, that in the event of the Liquidation, interest income of up to \$100,000 may be released to the Company if the proceeds of the Offering held by the Company outside of the Trust Account are not sufficient to cover the costs and expenses associated with implementing the Company's plan of dissolution.

(ee) Reservation of Shares. To reserve and keep available the maximum number of its authorized but unissued securities that are issuable upon exercise of the Warrants outstanding from time to time.

(ff) Rule 419. To use commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the Company from becoming subject to Rule 419 under the Securities Act prior to the consummation of any Business Combination, including using its reasonable best efforts to prevent any of the Company's outstanding securities from being deemed to be a "penny stock" as defined in Rule 3a-51-1 under the Exchange Act during such period.

(gg) Controls. To the extent required by Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act, to maintain "disclosure controls and procedures" (as defined under Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act) and a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary in order to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets, (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences.

(hh) Sarbanes-Oxley. As soon as legally required to do so, to take all actions, and to use its reasonable best efforts to cause its directors and officers, in their capacities as such, to take all actions, necessary to comply with any provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, including Section 402 related to loans and Sections 302 and 906 related to certifications, and to comply with the rules of the Commission and the Exchange promulgated thereunder and relating thereto.

(ii) Certificate of Incorporation. To not take any action or omit to take any action that would cause it to be in breach or violation of its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.

(jj) Insider Letter Amendments. To not take any action or omit to take any action which would cause a breach of the Insider Letter and to not allow any amendments to, or waivers of, the Insider Letter without the prior written consent of the Representative.

(kk) Trust Account Waivers. To seek to have all vendors, service providers (other than the Underwriters and its independent auditors), prospective target businesses, lenders or other third parties with which it does business enter into agreements waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account for the benefit of the Public Shareholders. Such agreements shall substantially be in the forms attached hereto as Exhibit II and Exhibit III.

(ll) Future Financings. The Company agrees that neither it, nor any successor of the Company, will consummate any public or private equity or debt financing prior to or in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination, unless all investors in such financing expressly waive, in writing, any rights in or claims against the Trust Account.

(mm) Business Combination. The Company may consummate the initial Business Combination and conduct redemptions of Common Stock and Warrants for cash upon consummation of such Business Combination without a stockholder vote pursuant to Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act, including the filing of tender offer documents with the Commission; such tender offer documents will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the redemption rights as is required under the Commission's proxy rules and will provide each Public Shareholder of the Company with the opportunity prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination to redeem the Public Shares held by such Public Shareholder for an amount in cash equal to (A) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account as of two (2) business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination representing (x) the net proceeds held in the Trust Account from the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Units and (y) any interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account (which interest shall be net of taxes payable), divided by (B) the total number of shares of Common Stock sold as part of the Public Units in the Offering (the "**Public Shares**") then outstanding; if, however, the Company elects not to file such tender offer documents, a stockholder vote is required by law in connection with the initial Business Combination, or the Company decides to hold a stockholder vote for business or other reasons, the Company will submit such Business Combination to the Company's stockholders for their approval (the "**Business Combination Vote**"); with respect to the initial Business Combination Vote, if any, the Sponsor, Cowen Investments and each of the Company's directors, officers and director nominees party to the Insider Letter has agreed to vote all of their respective Founder Shares, shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Units and any other shares of Common Stock purchased during or after the Offering in favor of the Company's initial Business Combination; if the Company seeks stockholder approval of the initial Business Combination, the Company will offer to each Public Shareholder the right to have its shares of Common Stock redeemed in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the proxy rules of the Commission at a per share redemption price (the "**Redemption Price**") equal to (I) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account as of two (2) business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination representing (1) the net proceeds held in the Trust Account from the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Units and (2) any interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account (which interest shall be net of taxes payable), divided by (II) the total number of Public Shares then outstanding; if the Company seeks stockholder approval of the initial Business Combination, the Company may proceed with such Business Combination only if a majority of the outstanding shares voted by the stockholders at a duly-held stockholder meeting are voted to approve such Business Combination; if, after seeking and receiving such stockholder approval, the Company elects to so proceed, it will redeem the Common Stock, at the Redemption Price, from those Public Shareholders who affirmatively requested such redemption; only Public Shareholders holding Common Stock who properly exercise their redemption rights, in accordance with the applicable tender offer or proxy materials related to such Business Combination, shall be entitled to receive distributions from the Trust Account in connection with an initial Business Combination, and the Company shall pay no distributions with respect to any other holders of shares of capital stock of the Company in connection therewith; in the event that the Company does not effect a Business Combination by twenty-four (24) months from the Initial Closing Date, the Company will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten (10) business days thereafter, redeem all of the Public Shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable and less such net interest in an amount of up to \$100,000 to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of then outstanding Public Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish the Public Shareholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law; only Public Shareholders holding Common Stock included in the Public Units shall be entitled to receive such redemption amounts and the Company shall pay no such redemption amounts or any distributions in liquidation with respect to any other shares of capital stock of the Company; the Company will not propose any amendment to its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation that would affect the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem all of the outstanding Public Shares if the Company has not consummated a Business Combination within twenty four (24) months from the Initial Closing Date, as further described in the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, unless the Company offers the right to redeem the Public Shares in connection with such amendment.

(nn) Reserved.

(oo) Public Announcement of Business Combination. In the event that the Company desires or is required by an applicable law or regulation to cause an announcement ("**Business Combination Announcement**") to be placed in The Wall Street Journal, The New York Times or any other news or media publication or outlet or to be made via a public filing or submission with the Commission announcing the consummation of the Business Combination that indicates that the Underwriters were the underwriters in the Offering, the Company shall supply the Representative with a draft of the Business Combination Announcement and provide the Representative with a reasonable advance opportunity to comment thereon, subject to the agreement of the Underwriters to keep confidential such draft announcement in accordance with such Underwriter's standard policies regarding confidential information.



(pp) Target Fair Market Value. The Company agrees that the operating business(es) or assets that it acquires in its initial Business Combination (the **Target Business**) must have an aggregate fair market value equal to at least 80% of the balance in the Trust Account (excluding any taxes) at the time of signing the definitive agreement for the Business Combination with such Target Business. The fair market value of such business must be determined by the Board of Directors of the Company based upon standards generally accepted by the financial community, such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and book value. If the Board of Directors of the Company is not able to independently determine that the Target Business meets such fair market value requirement, the Company will obtain an opinion from an unaffiliated, independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business the Company is seeking to acquire. The Company is not required to obtain such an opinion as to the fair market value if the Company's Board of Directors independently determines that the Target Business does have sufficient fair market value.

(qq) Founder Shares. Upon the earlier to occur of the expiration or termination of the Underwriters' over-allotment option, the Company shall cancel or otherwise effect the forfeiture of Founder Shares from the Founders pursuant to the Founder Subscription Agreements, in an aggregate amount equal to the number of Founder Shares determined by multiplying (a) 562,500 by (b) a fraction, (i) the numerator of which is 2,250,000 minus the number of Public Units purchased by the Underwriters upon the exercise of their over-allotment option and (ii) the denominator of which is 2,250,000. For the avoidance of doubt, if the Underwriters exercise their over-allotment option in full, the Company shall not cancel or otherwise effect the forfeiture of the Founder Shares pursuant to this subsection.

(rr) Loans. If the Company and Sponsor determine that a loan to the Company is required to fund the Company's expenses in connection with the closing of a Business Combination, Cowen or an affiliate thereof shall lend to the Company an amount equal to 16% of the total amount loaned to the Company by Cowen or such affiliate thereof and the Sponsor on the same terms as the Sponsor.

5. PAYMENT OF EXPENSES. The Company agrees to pay, or reimburse if paid by any Underwriter, whether or not the transactions contemplated hereby are consummated or this Agreement is terminated: (a) the costs incident to the authorization, issuance, sale, preparation and delivery of the Public Units, Public Shares and Public Warrants and any taxes payable in that connection; (b) the costs incident to the registration of the Public Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act; (c) the costs incident to the preparation, printing and distribution of the Registration Statement, each Preliminary Prospectus, the General Disclosure Package, the Prospectus, any amendments, supplements and exhibits thereto and the costs of printing, reproducing and distributing, the "Agreement Among Underwriters" between the Representative and the Underwriters, the Master Selected Dealers' Agreement, the Underwriters' Questionnaire, this Agreement and any closing documents by mail or other means of communications; (d) any applicable listing or other fees; (e) the fees and expenses of qualifying the Public Units under the securities laws of the several jurisdictions as provided in Section 4(h) and of preparing, printing and distributing wrappers, Blue Sky Memoranda and Legal Investment Surveys; (f) the cost of preparing and printing stock certificates; (g) all fees and expenses of the registrar and transfer agent of the Common Stock and the warrant agent of the Warrants and Trustee; and (h) all other costs and expenses incident to the offering of the Public Units or the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Agreement (including the fees and expenses of the Company's counsel and the Company's independent accountants); provided that, except to the extent otherwise provided in this Section 5 and in Sections 9 and 10, the Underwriters shall pay their own costs and expenses, including the fees and expenses of their counsel, any transfer taxes on the resale of any Public Units by them and the expenses of advertising any offering of the Public Units made by the Underwriters.

6. CONDITIONS TO UNDERWRITERS' OBLIGATIONS. The respective obligations of the several Underwriters hereunder are subject to the accuracy, when made and as of the Applicable Time and on each Closing Date, of the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein, to the accuracy of the statements made by or on behalf of the Company in any certificates pursuant to the provisions hereof, to the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder, and to each of the following additional terms and conditions:

(a) Registration Compliance: No Stop Orders. The Registration Statement has become effective under the Securities Act, and no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any part thereof, preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus or any part thereof shall have been issued and no proceedings for that purpose or pursuant to Section 8A under the Securities Act shall have been initiated or threatened by the Commission, and all requests for additional information on the part of the Commission (to be included in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or otherwise) shall have been complied with to the reasonable satisfaction of the Representative; the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, if any, and the Prospectus shall have been filed with the Commission within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by, and in compliance with, the Rules and Regulations and in accordance with Section 4(a) of this Agreement, and the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, if any, shall have become effective immediately upon its filing with the Commission; and FINRA shall have raised no unresolved objection to the fairness and reasonableness of the terms of this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby.

(b) No Material Misstatements. None of the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto shall contain an untrue statement of a fact which, in the written opinion of counsel for the Underwriters, is material or omits to state any fact which, in the written opinion of such counsel, is material and is required to be stated therein or is necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, and none of the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto shall contain an untrue statement of fact which, in the written opinion of such counsel, is material or omits to state any fact which, in the written opinion of such counsel, is material and is necessary in order to make the statements, in the light of the circumstances in which they were made, not misleading.

(c) Corporate Proceedings. All corporate proceedings incident to the authorization, form and validity of each of this Agreement, the Other Transaction Agreements, the Units and the shares of Common Stock and Warrants included therein, the Founder Shares, the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, and the transactions contemplated hereby, shall be reasonably satisfactory in all material respects to counsel for the Underwriters, and the Company shall have furnished to such counsel all documents and information that they may reasonably request to enable them to pass upon such matters.

(d) Opinion and 10b-5 Statement of Counsel for the Company. Greenberg Traurig, LLP shall have furnished to the Representative such counsel's written opinion and 10b-5 Statement, as counsel to the Company, addressed to the Underwriters and dated each Closing Date, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative.

(e) Opinion and 10b-5 Statement of Counsel for the Underwriters. The Representative shall have received from Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP, counsel for the Underwriters, such opinion or opinions and 10b-5 Statement, dated each Closing Date, with respect to such matters as the Underwriters may reasonably require, and the Company shall have furnished to such counsel such documents as they request for enabling them to pass upon such matters.

(f) Comfort Letter. At the time of the execution of this Agreement, the Representative shall have received from WithumSmith+Brown, PC a letter, addressed to the Underwriters, executed and dated such date, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative (i) confirming that they are an independent registered accounting firm with respect to the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act and the Rules and Regulations and PCAOB and (ii) stating the conclusions and findings of such firm, of the type ordinarily included in accountants' "comfort letters" to underwriters, with respect to the financial statements and certain financial information contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(g) Bring-Down Comfort. On the effective date of any post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement and on each Closing Date, the Representative shall have received a letter (the “*bring-down letter*”) from WithumSmith+Brown, PC addressed to the Underwriters and dated such Closing Date confirming, as of the date of the bring-down letter (or, with respect to matters involving changes or developments since the respective dates as of which specified financial information is given in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, as the case may be, as of a date not more than three (3) business days prior to the date of the bring-down letter), the conclusions and findings of such firm, of the type ordinarily included in accountants’ “comfort letters” to underwriters, with respect to the financial information and other matters covered by its letter delivered to the Representative concurrently with the execution of this Agreement pursuant to paragraph (f) of this Section 6.

(h) Officers’ Certificate. The Company shall have furnished to the Representative a certificate, dated as of each Closing Date, of its Chairman of the Board or President and its Chief Financial Officer stating in their respective capacities as officers of the Company on behalf of the Company that (i) no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement (including, for avoidance of doubt, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement), or any post-effective amendment thereto, shall be in effect and no proceedings for such purpose shall have been instituted or, to their knowledge, threatened by the Commission, (ii) for the period from and including the date of this Agreement through and including such Closing Date, there has not occurred any Material Adverse Effect, (iii) to their knowledge after reasonable investigation, as of such Closing Date, the representations and warranties of the Company in this Agreement are true and correct and the Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied hereunder at or prior to such Closing Date and (iv) there has not been, subsequent to the date of the most recent audited financial statements included or incorporated by reference in the General Disclosure Package, any Material Adverse Effect in the financial position or results of operations of the Company, or any change or development that, singularly or in the aggregate, would reasonably be expected to involve a Material Adverse Effect, except as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(i) No Material Adverse Effect. Since the date of the latest audited financial statements included in the General Disclosure Package, (i) the Company shall not have sustained any loss or interference with its business from fire, explosion, flood or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, or from any labor dispute or court or governmental action, order or decree, otherwise than as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and (ii) there shall not have been any change in the capital stock or long-term debt of the Company, or any change, or any development involving a prospective change, in or affecting the business, properties, general affairs, management, financial position, stockholders’ equity, results of operations or prospects of the Company, otherwise than as set forth in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the effect of which, in any such case described in clause (i) or (ii) of this paragraph (i), is, in the judgment of the Representative, so material and adverse as to make it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the sale or delivery of the Public Units on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(j) No Legal Impediment to Issuance. No action shall have been taken and no law, statute, rule, regulation or order shall have been enacted, adopted or issued by any governmental or regulatory agency or body which would prevent the issuance or sale of the Public Units; and no injunction, restraining order or order of any other nature by any federal or state court of competent jurisdiction shall have been issued which would prevent the issuance or sale of the Public Units or materially and adversely affect or potentially materially and adversely affect the business or operations of the Company.

(k) Market Conditions. Subsequent to the execution and delivery of this Agreement there shall not have occurred any of the following: (i) trading in any of the Company’s securities shall have been suspended or materially limited by the Commission or the Exchange, or trading in securities generally on the New York Stock Exchange, NYSE American, NASDAQ Global Select Market, NASDAQ Global Market, or the Exchange or in the over-the-counter market, or trading in any securities of the Company on any exchange or in the over-the-counter market, shall have been suspended or materially limited, or minimum or maximum prices or a maximum range for prices shall have been established on any such exchange or such market by the Commission, by such exchange or market or by any other regulatory body or governmental authority having jurisdiction, (ii) a banking moratorium shall have been declared by Federal or state authorities or a material disruption shall have occurred in commercial banking or securities settlement or clearance services in the United States, (iii) the United States shall have become engaged in hostilities or there shall have been an outbreak of or escalation in hostilities involving the United States, or there shall have been a declaration of a national emergency or war by the United States or (iv) there shall have occurred such a material adverse change in general economic, political or financial conditions (or the effect of international conditions on the financial markets in the United States shall be such) as to make it, in the judgment of the Representative, impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the sale or delivery of the Public Units on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(l) Exchange Listing. The Exchange shall have approved the Public Units, the Public Shares and the Public Warrants for listing thereon, subject only to official notice of issuance.

(m) Good Standing. The Representative shall have received on each Closing Date satisfactory evidence of the good standing of the Company in Delaware and its good standing as a foreign entity in such other jurisdictions as the Representative may reasonably request, in each case in writing or any standard form of telecommunication from the appropriate governmental authorities of such jurisdictions.

(n) Other Transaction Agreements. The Representative shall have received duly executed copies of the Other Transaction Agreements.

(o) Secretary's Certificate. The Company shall have furnished to the Representative a Secretary's Certificate of the Company, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters and customary for the type of offering contemplated by this Agreement.

(p) Additional Document. On or prior to each Closing Date, the Company shall have furnished to the Representative such further certificates and documents as the Representative may reasonably request.

(q) Private Placement Units. At least one (1) business day prior to the effective date of the Registration Statement, the Sponsor and at least one (1) business day prior to the Initial Closing Date, Cowen Investments shall have caused its respective purchase price for the Private Placement Units to be deposited into the Trust Account such that upon payment for the Public Units pursuant to this Agreement, the amount of cash in the Trust Account (without giving effect to any income earned thereon) will equal \$10.10 per Public Unit outstanding as of the Initial Closing Date.

All opinions, letters, evidence and certificates mentioned above or elsewhere in this Agreement shall be deemed to be in compliance with the provisions hereof only if they are in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters.

#### 7. INDEMNIFICATION AND CONTRIBUTION.

(a) Indemnification of Underwriters by the Company. The Company shall indemnify and hold harmless each Underwriter, its affiliates, directors, officers, managers, members, employees, representatives and agents and each person, if any, who controls any Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act (collectively the "Underwriter Indemnified Parties," and each an "Underwriter Indemnified Party") against any loss, claim, damage, expense or liability whatsoever (or any action, investigation or proceeding in respect thereof), joint or several, to which such Underwriter Indemnified Party may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise, insofar as such loss, claim, damage, expense, liability, action, investigation or proceeding arises out of or is based upon (A) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto or in any materials or information provided to investors by, or with the approval of, the Company in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Public Units, including any roadshow or investor presentations made to investors by the Company (whether in person or electronically) ("Marketing Materials") or (B) the omission or alleged omission to state in any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto or in any Marketing Materials, a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, and shall reimburse each Underwriter Indemnified Party promptly upon demand for any legal fees or other expenses reasonably incurred by that Underwriter Indemnified Party in connection with investigating, or preparing to defend, or defending against, or appearing as a third party witness in respect of, or otherwise incurred in connection with, any such loss, claim, damage, expense, liability, action, investigation or proceeding, as such fees and expenses are incurred; provided, however, that the Company shall not be liable in any such case to the extent that any such loss, claim, damage, expense or liability arises out of or is based upon an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement in, or omission or alleged omission from any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or any such amendment or supplement thereto, or any Marketing Materials made in reliance upon, and in conformity with, written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of any Underwriter specifically for use therein, which information the parties hereto agree is limited to the Underwriters' Information. Each indemnity agreement in this Section 8(a) is not exclusive and is in addition to each other indemnity agreement in this Section 8(a) and each other liability which the Company might have under this Agreement or otherwise, and shall not limit any rights or remedies which may otherwise be available under this Agreement, at law or in equity to any Underwriter Indemnified Party.

(b) Indemnification of Company by the Underwriters. Each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, shall indemnify and hold harmless the Company and its directors, its officers who signed the Registration Statement and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act (collectively the “*Company Indemnified Parties*” and each a “*Company Indemnified Party*”) against any loss, claim, damage, expense or liability whatsoever (or any action, investigation or proceeding in respect thereof), joint or several, to which such Company Indemnified Party may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise, insofar as such loss, claim, damage, expense, liability, action, investigation or proceeding arises out of or is based upon (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto or (ii) the omission or alleged omission to state in any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto, a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, but in each case only to the extent that the untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission was made in reliance upon, and in conformity with, written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of that Underwriter specifically for use therein, which information the parties hereto agree is limited to the Underwriters’ Information, and shall reimburse the Company Indemnified Parties promptly upon demand for any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such party in connection with investigating or preparing to defend or defending against or appearing as third party witness in connection with any such loss, claim, damage, liability, action, investigation or proceeding, as such fees and expenses are incurred. This indemnity agreement is not exclusive and is in addition to any liability which the Underwriters might otherwise have and shall not limit any rights or remedies which may otherwise be available under this Agreement, at law or in equity to the Company Indemnified Parties.

(c) Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under this Section 7 of notice of the commencement of any action, the indemnified party shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against an indemnifying party under this Section 7, notify such indemnifying party in writing of the commencement of that action; provided, however, that the failure to notify the indemnifying party shall not relieve it from any liability which it may have under this Section 7 except to the extent it has been materially prejudiced by such failure; and, provided, further, that the failure to notify an indemnifying party shall not relieve it from any liability which it may have to an indemnified party otherwise than under this Section 7. If any such action shall be brought against an indemnified party, and it shall notify the indemnifying party thereof, the indemnifying party shall be entitled to participate therein and, to the extent that it wishes, jointly with any other similarly notified indemnifying party, to assume the defense of such action with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party (which counsel shall not, except with the written consent of the indemnified party, be counsel to the indemnifying party). After notice from the indemnifying party to the indemnified party of its election to assume the defense of such action, except as provided herein, the indemnifying party shall not be liable to the indemnified party under Section 7 for any legal or other expenses subsequently incurred by the indemnified party in connection with the defense of such action other than reasonable costs of investigation; provided, however, that any indemnified party shall have the right to employ separate counsel in any such action and to participate in the defense of such action but the fees and expenses of such counsel (other than reasonable costs of investigation) shall be at the expense of such indemnified party unless (i) the employment thereof has been specifically authorized in writing by the Company in the case of a claim for indemnification under Section 7(a) or the Representative in the case of a claim for indemnification under Section 7(b), (ii) such indemnified party shall have been advised in writing by its counsel that there may be one or more actual or potential legal defenses available to it which are different from or additional to those available to the indemnifying party or (iii) the indemnifying party has failed to assume the defense of such action and employ counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party within a reasonable period of time after notice of the commencement of the action or the indemnifying party does not diligently defend the action after assumption of the defense, in which case, if such indemnified party notifies the indemnifying party in writing that it elects to employ separate counsel at the expense of the indemnifying party, the indemnifying party shall not have the right to assume the defense of (or, in the case of a failure to diligently defend the action after assumption of the defense, to continue to defend) such action on behalf of such indemnified party and the indemnifying party shall be responsible for legal or other expenses subsequently incurred by such indemnified party in connection with the defense of such action; provided, however, that except in the circumstances described in clause (iii) of this Section 7(c), the indemnifying party shall not, in connection with any one such action or separate but substantially similar or related actions in the same jurisdiction arising out of the same general allegations or circumstances, be liable for the reasonable fees and expenses of more than one separate firm of attorneys at any time for all such indemnified parties (in addition to any local counsel), which firm shall be designated in writing by the Representative if the indemnified parties under this Section 7 consist of any Underwriter Indemnified Party or by the Company if the indemnified parties under this Section 7 consist of any Company Indemnified Parties. Subject to this Section 7(c), the amount payable by an indemnifying party under Section 7 shall include, but not be limited to, (x) reasonable legal fees and expenses of counsel to the indemnified party and any other expenses in investigating, or preparing to defend or defending against, or appearing as a third party witness in respect of, or otherwise incurred in connection with, any action, investigation, proceeding or claim and (y) all amounts paid in settlement of any of the foregoing. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified parties, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of judgment with respect to any pending or threatened action or any claim whatsoever, in respect of which indemnification or contribution could be sought under this Section 7 (whether or not the indemnified parties are actual or potential parties thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent (i) includes an unconditional release of each indemnified party in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party from all liability arising out of such action or claim and (ii) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party. Subject to the provisions of the following sentence, no indemnifying party shall be liable for settlement of any pending or threatened action or any claim whatsoever that is effected without its written consent (which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), but if settled with its written consent, if its consent has been unreasonably withheld or delayed or if there be a judgment for the plaintiff in any such matter, the indemnifying party agrees to indemnify and hold harmless any indemnified party from and against any loss or liability by reason of such settlement or judgment. In addition, if at any time an indemnified party shall have requested that an indemnifying party reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel, such indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of the nature contemplated by Section 7(a) effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than forty-five (45) days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the request for reimbursement, (ii) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least thirty (30) days prior to such settlement being entered into and (iii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed such indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement.

(d) If the indemnification provided for in this Section 7 is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party under Section 7(a) or 7(b), then each indemnifying party shall, in lieu of indemnifying such indemnified party, contribute to the amount paid, payable or otherwise incurred by such indemnified party as a result of such loss, claim, damage, expense or liability (or any action, investigation or proceeding in respect thereof), as incurred, (i) in such proportion as shall be appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Underwriters on the other from the offering of the Public Units or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) of this Section 7(d) is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to it in clause (i) of this Section 7(d) but also the relative fault of the Company on the one hand and the Underwriters on the other with respect to the statements, omissions, acts or failures to act which resulted in such loss, claim, damage, expense or liability (or any action, investigation or proceeding in respect thereof) as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Underwriters on the other with respect to such offering shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total net proceeds from the offering of the Public Units purchased under this Agreement (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total underwriting discounts and commissions received by the Underwriters with respect to the Public Units purchased under this Agreement, in each case as set forth in the table on the cover page of the Prospectus. The relative fault of the Company on the one hand and the Underwriters on the other shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company on the one hand or the Underwriters on the other, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such untrue statement, omission, act or failure to act; provided that the parties hereto agree that the written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of the Underwriters for use in the Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto, consists solely of the Underwriters' Information.

(e) The Company and the Underwriters agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to Section 7(d) above were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation which does not take into account the equitable considerations referred to Section 7(d) above. The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the loss, claim, damage, expense, liability, action, investigation or proceeding referred to in Section 7(d) above shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth above, any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating, preparing to defend or defending against or appearing as a third party witness in respect of, or otherwise incurred in connection with, any such loss, claim, damage, expense, liability, action, investigation or proceeding. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 7, no Underwriters shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total underwriting discounts and commissions received by such Underwriter with respect to the offering of the Stock exceeds the amount of any damages which the Underwriter has otherwise paid or become liable to pay by reason of any untrue or alleged untrue statement, omission or alleged omission, act or alleged act or failure to act. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. The Underwriters' obligations to contribute as provided in this Section 7 are several in proportion to their respective underwriting obligations and not joint.

8. *TERMINATION*. The obligations of the Underwriters hereunder may be terminated by the Representative, in its absolute discretion, by notice given to the Company prior to delivery of and payment for the Firm Units if, prior to that time, any of the events described in Sections 6(i), 6(j) or 6(k) have occurred or if the Underwriters shall decline to purchase the Firm Units for any reason permitted under this Agreement.

9. *REIMBURSEMENT OF UNDERWRITERS' EXPENSES*. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, if (a) this Agreement shall have been terminated pursuant to Section 8, (b) the Company shall fail to tender the Firm Units for delivery to the Underwriters for any reason not permitted under this Agreement, (c) the Underwriters shall decline to purchase the Firm Units for any reason permitted under this Agreement or (d) the sale of the Firm Units is not consummated because any condition to the obligations of the Underwriters set forth herein is not satisfied or because of the refusal, inability or failure on the part of the Company to perform any agreement herein or to satisfy any condition or to comply with the provisions hereof, then in addition to the payment of amounts in accordance with Section 5, the Company shall reimburse up to an aggregate of \$100,000 to the Underwriters, pro rata based on the number of Firm Units each Underwriter agreed to sell hereunder, for the fees and expenses of Underwriters' counsel and for such other out-of-pocket expenses as shall have been reasonably incurred by them in connection with this Agreement and the proposed purchase of the Firm Units, including travel and lodging expenses of the Underwriters, and upon demand the Company shall pay the full amount thereof to the Representative; provided that if this Agreement is terminated pursuant to Section 10 by reason of the default of one or more Underwriters, the Company shall not be obligated to reimburse any defaulting Underwriter on account of expenses to the extent incurred by such defaulting Underwriter, and provided further that the foregoing shall not limit any reimbursement obligation of the Company to any non-defaulting Underwriter under this Section 9.

10. *SUBSTITUTION OF UNDERWRITERS*. If any Underwriter or Underwriters shall default in its or their obligations to purchase Public Units hereunder on any Closing Date and the aggregate number of shares which such defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters agreed but failed to purchase does not exceed ten percent (10%) of the total number of Units to be purchased by all Underwriters on such Closing Date, the other Underwriters shall be obligated severally, in proportion to their respective commitments hereunder, to purchase the Units which such defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters agreed but failed to purchase on such Closing Date. If any Underwriter or Underwriters shall so default and the aggregate number of Units with respect to which such default or defaults occur is more than ten percent (10%) of the total number of Units to be purchased by all Underwriters on such Closing Date and arrangements satisfactory to the Representative and the Company for the purchase of such Units by other persons are not made within forty-eight (48) hours after such default, this Agreement shall terminate.

If the remaining Underwriters or substituted Underwriters are required hereby or agree to take up all or part of the Public Units of a defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters on such Closing Date as provided in this [Section 10](#), (i) the Company shall have the right to postpone such Closing Date for a period of not more than five (5) full business days in order that the Company may effect whatever changes may thereby be made necessary in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, or in any other documents or arrangements, and the Company agrees promptly to file any amendments to the Registration Statement or supplements to the Prospectus which may thereby be made necessary and (ii) the respective numbers of Units to be purchased by the remaining Underwriters or substituted Underwriters shall be taken as the basis of their underwriting obligation for all purposes of this Agreement. Nothing herein contained shall relieve any defaulting Underwriter of its liability to the Company or the other Underwriters for damages occasioned by its default hereunder. Any termination of this Agreement pursuant to this [Section 10](#) shall be without liability on the part of any non-defaulting Underwriter or the Company, except that the representations, warranties, covenants, indemnities, agreements and other statements set forth in [Section 2](#), the obligations with respect to expenses to be paid or reimbursed pursuant to [Sections 5](#) and [9](#) and the provisions of [Section 7](#) and [Sections 11](#) through [21](#), inclusive, shall not terminate and shall remain in full force and effect.

11. *RIGHT OF FIRST REFUSAL*. Upon the closing of the Offering, once the Company has focused on a specific target for the Business Combination and completed its initial due diligence on such target, the Company shall offer to engage the Representative as a financial advisor in connection with the Business Combination, *provided, however*, that the Representative may decline in writing such engagement in its sole and absolute discretion at such time. The terms of such engagement shall be set forth in a separate agreement between the Company and the Representative and contain terms that are customary to investment banks for similar transactions, including compliance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2)(E) to the extent applicable, and are mutually agreed to by the Company and the Representative, taking into account the extent of advice and effort provided by the Representative in connection with the target, including, without limitation, the size of the transaction and the source of the target.

12. *ABSENCE OF FIDUCIARY RELATIONSHIP*. The Company acknowledges and agrees that:

(a) each Underwriter's responsibility to the Company is solely contractual in nature, the Representative has been retained solely to act as underwriter in connection with the sale of the Public Units and no fiduciary, advisory or agency duty or relationship between the Representative or any other Underwriter, on the one hand, and the Company or any other party, on the other hand, has been created as a result of this Agreement or in respect of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, irrespective of whether the Representative or any other Underwriter has advised or is advising the Company on other matters;

(b) the price of the Public Units set forth in this Agreement was established by the Company following discussions and arm's-length negotiations with the Representative, and the Company is capable of evaluating and understanding, and understands and accepts, the terms, risks and conditions of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

(c) it has been advised that the Representative and its affiliates are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and that the Representative has no obligation to disclose such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship; and

(d) it waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims it may have against the Representative for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty and agrees that the Representative shall have no liability (whether direct or indirect) to the Company in respect of such a fiduciary duty claim or to any person asserting a fiduciary duty claim on behalf of or in right of the Company, including stockholders, employees or creditors of the Company.

13. *SUCCESSORS; PERSONS ENTITLED TO BENEFIT OF AGREEMENT*. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the several Underwriters, the Company and their respective successors and assigns. Nothing expressed or mentioned in this Agreement is intended or shall be construed to give any person, other than the persons mentioned in the preceding sentence, any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement, or any provisions herein contained, this Agreement and all conditions and provisions hereof being intended to be and being for the sole and exclusive benefit of such persons and for the benefit of no other person; except that the representations, warranties, covenants, agreements and indemnities of the Company contained in this Agreement shall also be for the benefit of the Underwriter Indemnified Parties, and the indemnities of the several Underwriters shall be for the benefit of the Company Indemnified Parties. No purchaser of any of the Public Units from any Underwriter shall be deemed to be a successor or assign by reason merely of such purchase.



14. *SURVIVAL OF INDEMNITIES, REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES, ETC.* The respective indemnities, covenants, agreements, representations, warranties and other statements of the Company and the several Underwriters, as set forth in this Agreement or made by them respectively, pursuant to this Agreement, shall remain in full force and effect, regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of any Underwriter, the Company or any person controlling any of them and shall survive delivery of and payment for the Public Units. Notwithstanding any termination of this Agreement, including any termination pursuant to Section 8 or Section 10, the indemnities, covenants, agreements, representations, warranties and other statements set forth in Sections 2, 5, 7 and 9 and Sections 11 through 21, inclusive, of this Agreement shall not terminate and shall remain in full force and effect at all times.

15. *NOTICES.* All statements, requests, notices and agreements hereunder shall be in writing, and:

(a) if to the Underwriters, shall be delivered or sent by mail, facsimile transmission or email to Cowen and Company, LLC, Attention: Head of Equity Capital Markets, Fax: 646-562-1249 with a copy to the General Counsel, Fax: 646-562-1124; and

(b) if to the Company, shall be delivered or sent by mail, facsimile transmission or email to Monocle Acquisition Corporation, 750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501, New York, NY 10022, Attention: Eric J. Zahler, President and Chief Executive Officer, email [eric@monoclepartnersllc.com](mailto:eric@monoclepartnersllc.com);

provided, however, that any notice to an Underwriter pursuant to Section 7 shall be delivered or sent by mail, facsimile transmission or email to such Underwriter at its address set forth in its acceptance notice to the Representative, which address will be supplied to any other party hereto by the Representative upon request. Any such statements, requests, notices or agreements shall take effect at the time of receipt thereof.

16. *DEFINITION OF CERTAIN TERMS.* For purposes of this Agreement, unless the context requires otherwise, (a) “*affiliate*” has the meaning set forth in Rule 405 under the Securities Act, (b) “*business day*” means any day on which the Exchange is open for trading, (c) “*person*” means a natural person or legal person, (d) “*subsidiary*” has the meaning set forth in Rule 405 under the Securities Act and (e) “*including*” means including without limitation.

17. *GOVERNING LAW, SUBMISSION TO JURISDICTION.* **This Agreement and any claim, counterclaim or dispute of any kind or nature whatsoever arising out of or in any way relating to this Agreement (the “Claim”), directly or indirectly, shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.** Except as set forth below, no Claim may be commenced, prosecuted or continued in any court other than the courts of the State of New York located in the City and County of New York or in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, which courts shall have jurisdiction over the adjudication of such matters, and each of the Underwriters and the Company consents to jurisdiction of such courts and personal service with respect thereto. Each of the Underwriters and the Company hereby consents to personal jurisdiction, service and venue in any court in which any Claim arising out of or in any way relating to this Agreement is brought by any third party against any Underwriter or any indemnified party. **EACH OF THE UNDERWRITERS AND THE COMPANY (ON ITS BEHALF AND, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ON BEHALF OF ITS STOCKHOLDERS AND AFFILIATES) WAIVES ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING OR COUNTERCLAIM (WHETHER BASED UPON CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) IN ANY WAY ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT.** Each of the Underwriters and the Company agrees that a final, non-appealable judgment in any such action, proceeding or counterclaim brought in any such court shall be conclusive and binding upon each of the Underwriters and the Company, respectively, and may be enforced in any other courts to the jurisdiction of which each of the Underwriters and the Company, respectively, is or may be subject, by suit upon such final, non-appealable judgment.

18. *UNDERWRITERS' INFORMATION.* The parties hereto acknowledge and agree that, for all purposes of this Agreement, the Underwriters' Information consists solely of the following information in the Prospectus: (i) the last paragraph on the front cover page concerning the terms of the offering by the Underwriters; and (ii) the statements set forth in the sixth and eighteenth through twenty-third paragraphs under the heading "Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest)," only insofar as such statements relate to the amount of selling concessions and reallowance or to over-allotment and stabilization activities that may be undertaken by the Underwriters, and the fourth and twenty-second paragraphs under the caption "Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest)" in the Prospectus.

19. *AUTHORITY OF THE REPRESENTATIVE.* In connection with this Agreement, the Representative will act for and on behalf of the several Underwriters, and any action taken under this Agreement by the Representative will be binding on all the Underwriters.

20. *PARTIAL UNENFORCEABILITY.* The invalidity or unenforceability of any section, paragraph, clause or provision of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other section, paragraph, clause or provision hereof. If any section, paragraph, clause or provision of this Agreement is for any reason determined to be invalid or unenforceable, there shall be deemed to be made such minor changes (and only such minor changes) as are necessary to make it valid and enforceable.

21. *GENERAL.* This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement of the parties to this Agreement and supersedes all prior written or oral and all contemporaneous oral agreements, understandings and negotiations with respect to the subject matter hereof. In this Agreement, the masculine, feminine and neuter genders and the singular and the plural include one another. The section headings in this Agreement are for the convenience of the parties only and will not affect the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. This Agreement may be amended or modified, and the observance of any term of this Agreement may be waived, only by a writing signed by the Company and the Representative.

22. *COUNTERPARTS.* This Agreement may be signed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, with the same effect as if the signatures thereto and hereto were upon the same instrument.

If the foregoing is in accordance with your understanding please indicate your acceptance of this Agreement by signing in the space provided for that purpose below.

Very truly yours,

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

Accepted and agreed to as of the date first above written,  
on behalf of themselves and the other several Underwriters  
named in Schedule A

COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC

By: /s/ Bill Follis  
Name: Bill Follis  
Title: Managing Director

**SCHEDULE A**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Number of Firm Units to be Purchased</b>
Cowen and Company, LLC	12,000,000
Chardan Capital Markets, LLC	3,000,000
<b>Total</b>	<b>15,000,000</b>

**SCHEDULE B**

**Pricing Information**

Firm Units to be Sold: 15,000,000 units

Offering Price: \$10.00 per unit

Underwriting Discounts and Commissions: 2%

Estimated Net Proceeds to the Company (after underwriting discounts and commissions, but before transaction expenses): \$147,000,000.00

**SCHEDULE C**

**Written Testing-the-Waters Communications**

Monocle Acquisition Corporation Management Presentation, dated October 2018

**SCHEDULE D**

**FINRA Affiliates**

None

**Exhibit I**

**Monocle Acquisition Corporation**

**[Date]**

Monocle Acquisition Corporation announced today that Cowen and Company, LLC, the lead book-running manager in the Company's recent public sale of 15,000,000 units, is [waiving][releasing] a lock-up restriction with respect to [ ] [shares of the Company's common stock] [warrants of the Company][units of the Company] held by [certain officers or directors][an officer or director] of the Company. The [waiver][release] will take effect on [date] and the shares may be sold on or after such date.

**This press release is not an offer for sale of the securities in the United States or in any other jurisdiction where such offer is prohibited and such securities may not be offered or sold in the United States absent registration or exemption from registration under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended.**



**Exhibit II**

**Form of Target Business Letter**

Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is made to the Final Prospectus of Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**"), dated February 6, 2019 (the "**Prospectus**"). Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Prospectus.

We have read the Prospectus and understand that the Company has established the Trust Account, initially in an amount of at least \$150,000,000, for the benefit of the Public Stockholders and that, except for the interest earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account, the Company may disburse monies from the Trust Account only: (i) to the Public Stockholders in the event of the conversion of their shares upon consummation of a Business Combination or upon an amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as described in the Prospectus, (ii) to the Company in limited amounts for its income and other tax obligations, (iii) to the Public Stockholders in connection with the Company's liquidation in the event the Company is unable to consummate a Business Combination within the required time period or (iv) to the Company concurrently with, or after it consummates a Business Combination.

For and in consideration of the Company agreeing to evaluate the undersigned for purposes of consummating a Business Combination with it, the undersigned hereby agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Trust Account (each, a "**Claim**") and hereby waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any negotiations, contracts or agreements with the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

---

Print Name of Target Business

---

Authorized Signature of Target Business

**Exhibit III**

**Form of Vendor Letter**

Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is made to the Final Prospectus of Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**"), dated February 6, 2019 (the "**Prospectus**"). Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Prospectus.

We have read the Prospectus and understand that the Company has established the Trust Account, initially in an amount of at least \$150,000,000, for the benefit of the Public Stockholders and that, except for the interest earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account, the Company may disburse monies from the Trust Account only: (i) to the Public Stockholders in the event of the conversion of their shares upon consummation of a Business Combination or upon an amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as described in the Prospectus, (ii) to the Company in limited amounts for its income and other tax obligations, (iii) to the Public Stockholders in connection with the Company's liquidation in the event the Company is unable to consummate a Business Combination within the required time period or (iv) to the Company concurrently with, or after it consummates a Business Combination.

For and in consideration of the Company agreeing to use the services of the undersigned, the undersigned hereby agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Trust Account (each, a "**Claim**") and hereby waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any services provided to the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

---

Print Name of Vendor

---

Authorized Signature of Vendor

**COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC**  
**599 Lexington Avenue, 25th Floor**  
**New York, NY 10022**

February 6, 2019

Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022

Attn: Eric J. Zahler, President and Chief Executive Officer

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This is to confirm our agreement whereby Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation ("**Company**"), has requested Cowen and Company, LLC and Chardan Capital Markets, LLC, 17 State Street, Suite 2100, New York, NY 10004 (together, the "**Advisors**" and each an "**Advisor**") to assist it in connection with the Company engaging in a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination (in each case, a "**Business Combination**") with one or more businesses (each a "**Target**") as described in the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-228470) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("**Registration Statement**") in connection with the Company's initial public offering ("**IPO**").

1. Services and Fees.

- (a) The Advisors will, from time to time, upon the Company's request and in consultation with the Company:
- (i) Assist the Company in arranging meetings with its stockholders to discuss one or more potential Business Combinations, including making calls directly to stockholders to discuss each potential Business Combination and each potential Target's attributes and providing regular marketing feedback, including written status reports, from these meetings and participate in direct interaction with stockholders, in all cases to the extent legally permissible;
  - (ii) Assist the Company in preparing presentations to be used with the Company's stockholders for each potential Business Combination;
  - (iii) Introduce the Company to potential investors to purchase the Company's securities in connection with the Business Combination;
  - (iv) Provide financial advisory services to assist the Company in the Company's efforts to obtain any stockholder approval for one or more Business Combinations, until such time as the Company has completed an initial Business Combination;
  - (v) Assist the Company with any press releases and/or filings related to the Business Combination or related Target; and
  - (vi) Assist the Company with any other reasonable marketing services as may be customary and appropriate in connection with the Company's consummation of a Business Combination (the activities described in the foregoing clauses (i)-(vi), the "**Services**").

(b) As compensation for the Services, the Company will pay the Advisors a cash fee equal to, in the aggregate, 3.5% of the gross proceeds received by the Company from the sale of its equity securities pursuant to the Registration Statement during the IPO, including any proceeds from the full or partial exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option described therein (the "**Fee**"). The Fee is due and payable to the Advisors by wire transfer at the closing of the initial Business Combination ("**Closing**"), and shall be allocated as agreed to among the Advisors. If a proposed Business Combination is not consummated for any reason during the 21-month period from the closing of the IPO (as such period may be extended), no Fee shall be due or payable to the Advisors hereunder. The Fee shall be exclusive of any other fees which may become payable to the Advisors pursuant to any other agreement between the Advisors and the Company or the Target.

2. Expenses. At the Closing, the Company shall reimburse the Advisors for all reasonable costs and expenses incurred by the Advisors (excluding any fees and disbursements of counsel) in connection with the performance of the Services hereunder; provided, however, that all expenses in excess of \$5,000 in the aggregate shall be subject to the Company's prior written approval, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld.

3. Company Cooperation: Information.

(a) The Company will provide full cooperation to each Advisor as may be necessary for the efficient performance by such Advisor of its obligations hereunder, including, but not limited to, providing to such Advisor and its counsel, on a timely basis, all documents and information regarding the Company and Target that such Advisor may reasonably request or that are otherwise relevant to the Advisor's performance of its obligations hereunder (collectively, the "**Information**"); making the Company's management, auditors, consultants and advisors available to such Advisor; and using commercially reasonable efforts to provide such Advisor with reasonable access to the management, auditors, suppliers, customers, consultants and advisors of Target. The Company will promptly notify the Advisors of any change in facts or circumstances or new developments affecting the Company or Target or that might reasonably be considered material to any Advisor's engagement hereunder.

(b) Each Advisor shall: (i) not disclose to any third parties any Information, presentations and/or materials about the Company, its stockholders and/or affiliates, a potential Business Combination and any Targets (collectively, the "**Confidential Information**"), to the extent that any such information is not already provided to the public in the Registration Statement, unless such Advisor obtains the Company's prior written approval (which may be provided via email); (ii) use all Confidential Information provided to it by the Company or any of its officers, directors, affiliates or advisors solely for the purpose of providing the Services; and (iii) take such commercially reasonable precautions as would be prudent given the nature of the Confidential Information, the delivery method, and other relevant factors, in order to prevent disclosure of Confidential Information to third parties.

(c) Each Advisor agrees that, upon request of the Company, it will (a) destroy or return to the Company all materials provided to the Advisors by the Company which contain Confidential Information and (b) destroy all materials containing or reflecting any Confidential Information, provided, that the Advisors may retain copies of the Confidential Information and such other materials that they are required by law, regulation or internal policies and procedures to retain in their files, subject to the terms hereof. Each Advisor shall certify such destruction to the Company in a certificate signed by an authorized officer who has personally supervised such destruction. Any Confidential Information maintained by the Advisors shall be maintained in accordance with such Advisor's document retention policies and procedures and applicable laws, rules and regulation.

(d) If any Advisor reasonably believes it is required by law to disclose any Confidential Information, such Advisor shall: (i) unless prohibited by law or regulation, provide to the Company prompt, advance written notice of such requirement so that the Company has adequate opportunity to seek a protective order or other appropriate remedy; (ii) assist the Company in seeking a protective order or other appropriate remedy; and (iii) in the event such protective order or other remedy is not obtained or the Company waives compliance with the provisions of this section, disclose only that portion of the Confidential Information which such Advisor or its representatives, as the case may be, are advised by counsel is legally required to be disclosed, and exercise reasonable best efforts to obtain assurance that such information will be treated as confidential. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no such notice shall be required in respect of disclosures of Confidential Information to financial regulatory authorities having jurisdiction over the Advisors in connection with routine regulatory inquiries or examinations.

4. Representations: Warranties and Covenants.

(a) The Company represents, warrants and covenants to each Advisor that all Information it makes available to any Advisor by or on behalf of the Company in connection with the performance of its obligations hereunder will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make statements made, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading as of the date thereof and as of the consummation of the Business Combination.

(b) Each Advisor represents, warrants and covenants to the Company that it (i) is not prohibited from entering into this Agreement by any other contract, agreement, law or order; (ii) will use personnel of required skill, experience and qualifications to perform the Services; and (iii) will provide written and oral updates as to the performance of the Services as requested by the Company.

5 . Indemnity. The Company shall indemnify the Advisors and their affiliates and directors, officers, employees, shareholders, representatives and agents in accordance with the indemnification provisions set forth in Annex I hereto, all of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Notwithstanding the foregoing and Annex 1, each Advisor agrees, if there is no Closing, (i) that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Company's trust account ("**Trust Account**") established in connection with the IPO with respect to the Fee or any expenses provided for hereunder (each, a "**Claim**"); (ii) to waive any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any Services provided to the Company hereunder; and (iii) to not seek recourse against the Trust Account with respect to the Fee or any expenses provided for hereunder.

6 . Use of Name and Reports. Without each Advisor's prior written consent (which may be provided via email), neither the Company nor any of its affiliates (nor any director, officer, manager, partner, member, employee or agent thereof) shall quote or refer to in any communication that is intended to become generally available to the public (i) any Advisor's name or (ii) any advice rendered by any Advisor to the Company or any communication from any Advisor, in connection with performance of the Services, except as required by applicable federal or state law, regulation or securities exchange rule.

7. Status as Independent Contractor. Each Advisor shall perform the Services as an independent contractor and not as an employee of the Company or affiliate thereof. It is expressly understood and agreed to by the parties that no Advisor shall have authority to act for, represent or bind the Company or any affiliate thereof in any manner, except as may be expressly agreed to by the Company in writing. In rendering such services, the Advisors will be acting solely pursuant to a contractual relationship on an arm's-length basis. This Agreement is not intended to create a fiduciary relationship between the parties and neither any Advisor nor any of such Advisor's officers, directors or personnel will owe any fiduciary duty to the Company or any other person in connection with any of the matters contemplated by this Agreement.

8. Potential Conflicts. The Company acknowledges that the Advisors are full-service securities firms engaged in securities trading and brokerage activities and providing investment banking and advisory services from which conflicting interests may arise. Subject to the Advisors' compliance with their obligations in Section 3 hereof and pursuant to applicable laws, (a) in the ordinary course of business, each Advisor and its affiliates may at any time hold long or short positions, and may trade or otherwise effect transactions, for its own account or the accounts of customers, in debt or equity securities of the Company, its affiliates or other entities that may be involved in the transactions contemplated hereby, and (b) nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to limit or restrict any Advisor or any of its affiliates in conducting such business.

9. Entire Agreement. This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding among the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior agreements and understandings, oral or written, with respect thereto. This Agreement may not be modified or terminated orally or in any manner other than by an agreement in writing signed by the parties hereto.

10. Notices. Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed given when sent via email to each party at its respective address set forth below its signature and received by such party's online access provider or mailed by certified mail or private courier service, return receipt requested, addressed to each party at its respective addresses set forth above, or such other address as may be given by a party in a notice given pursuant to this Section 10.

11. Successors and Assigns. This Agreement may not be assigned by any party without the written consent of the other parties hereto. This Agreement shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and, except where prohibited, to their successors and permitted assigns.

12. Non-Exclusivity. Nothing herein shall be deemed to restrict or prohibit the engagement by the Company of other consultants providing the same or similar services or the payment by the Company of fees to such parties. The Company's engagement of any other consultant(s) shall not affect any Advisor's right to receive the Fee and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to this Agreement.

13. Applicable Law; Venue. This Agreement shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

**IN THE EVENT OF ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY HERETO AGREES THAT THE DISPUTE SHALL BE BROUGHT AND ENFORCED IN THE COURTS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, COUNTY OF NEW YORK UNDER THE ACCELERATED ADJUDICATION PROCEDURES OF THE COMMERCIAL DIVISION. EACH PARTY IRREVOCABLY SUBMITS TO SUCH JURISDICTION, WHICH JURISDICTION SHALL BE EXCLUSIVE. EACH PARTY HEREBY WAIVES ANY OBJECTION TO SUCH EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION AND THAT SUCH COURTS REPRESENT AN INCONVENIENT FORUM. ANY PROCESS OR SUMMONS TO BE SERVED IN SUCH A DISPUTE UPON A PARTY MAY BE SERVED BY TRANSMITTING A COPY THEREOF BY REGISTERED OR CERTIFIED MAIL, POSTAGE PREPAID, ADDRESSED TO SUCH PARTY AT THE ADDRESS SET FORTH AT THE BEGINNING OF THIS AGREEMENT. SUCH MAILING SHALL BE DEEMED PERSONAL SERVICE AND SHALL BE LEGAL AND BINDING UPON THE PARTY BEING SERVED IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING OR CLAIM. THE PARTIES AGREE THAT THE PREVAILING PARTY(IES) IN ANY SUCH ACTION SHALL BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM THE OTHER PARTY(IES) ALL OF SUCH PREVAILING PARTY'S(IES)' REASONABLE ATTORNEYS' FEES AND EXPENSES RELATING TO SUCH ACTION OR PROCEEDING AND/OR INCURRED IN CONNECTION WITH THE PREPARATION THEREFOR.**

14. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and all of which together shall constitute but one instrument.

[Signature Page follows]

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding among the Advisors and the Company with respect to the foregoing, please so indicate your agreement by signing in the place provided below, and this letter shall become a binding contract as of the date first set forth above.

COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC

By: /s/ Bill Follis  
Name: Bill Follis  
Title: Managing Director  
Email: william.follis@cowen.com

CHARDAN CAPITAL MARKETS, LLC

By: /s/ Jonas Grossman  
Name: Jonas Grossman  
Title: President  
Email: jgrossman@chardan.com

AGREED AND ACCEPTED BY:

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer  
Email: eric@monoclepartnersllc.com

*[Signature Page to Business Combination Marketing Agreement]*

---

### Indemnification

In connection with the Company's engagement of Cowen and Company, LLC and Chardan Capital Markets, LLC (together, the "Advisors" and each an "Advisor") pursuant to that certain letter agreement ("Agreement") of which this Annex forms a part, Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "Company") hereby agrees, subject to the second paragraph of Section 5 of the Agreement, to indemnify and hold harmless each Advisor and each of its affiliates and the respective directors, officers, employees, shareholders, representatives and agents of any of the foregoing (collectively the "Indemnified Persons"), from and against any and all claims, actions, suits, proceedings (including those of stockholders), damages, liabilities and expenses incurred by any of them (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel), as incurred (collectively a "Claim"), that (A) are related to or arise out of (i) any actions taken or omitted to be taken (including any untrue statements made or any statements omitted to be made) by the Company, or (ii) any actions taken or omitted to be taken by any Indemnified Person, in connection with the Company's engagement of the Advisors, or (B) otherwise relate to or arise out of any Advisor's activities on the Company's behalf under the Advisors' engagement, and the Company shall reimburse any Indemnified Person for all expenses (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel) as incurred by such Indemnified Person in connection with investigating, preparing and defending any such claim, action, suit or proceeding, whether or not in connection with pending or threatened litigation in which any Indemnified Person is a party. The Company will not, however, be responsible for any Claim that is finally judicially determined to have resulted from bad faith, gross negligence or willful misconduct of any Indemnified Person. The Company further agrees that no Indemnified Person shall have any liability to the Company for or in connection with the Company's engagement of the Advisors except for any Claim incurred by the Company as a result of such Indemnified Person's bad faith, gross negligence or willful misconduct.

The Company further agrees that it will not, without the prior written consent of each Advisor, settle, compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened Claim in respect of which indemnification may be sought hereunder (whether or not any Indemnified Person is an actual or potential party to such Claim), unless such settlement, compromise or consent includes an unconditional, irrevocable release of each Indemnified Person from any and all liability arising out of such Claim.

Promptly upon receipt by an Indemnified Person of notice of any complaint or the assertion or institution of any Claim with respect to which indemnification is being sought hereunder, such Indemnified Person shall notify the Company in writing of such complaint or of such assertion or institution, but failure to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company from any obligation it may have hereunder, except and only to the extent such failure results in the forfeiture by the Company of substantial rights and defenses. If the Company so elects or is requested by such Indemnified Person, the Company will assume the defense of such Claim, including the employment of counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Person and the payment of the fees and expenses of such counsel. In the event, however, that legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably determines that having common counsel would present such counsel with a conflict of interest or if the defendant in, or target of, any such Claim includes an Indemnified Person and the Company, and legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably concludes that there may be legal defenses available to it or other Indemnified Persons different from or in addition to those available to the Company, then such Indemnified Person may employ its own separate counsel to represent or defend him, her or it in any such Claim and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, if the Company fails timely or diligently to defend, contest, or otherwise protect against any Claim, the relevant Indemnified Party shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend, contest, compromise, settle, assert crossclaims, or counterclaims or otherwise protect against the same, and shall be fully indemnified by the Company therefor, including for the reasonable fees and expenses of its counsel and all amounts paid as a result of such Claim or the compromise or settlement thereof.

In addition, with respect to any Claim in which the Company assumes the defense, the Indemnified Person shall have the right to participate in such Claim and to retain his, her or its own counsel therefor at his, her or its own expense.



The Company agrees that if any indemnity sought by an Indemnified Person hereunder is held by a court to be unavailable for any reason, then (whether or not any Advisor is an Indemnified Person) the Company and the Advisors shall contribute to the Claim for which such indemnity is held unavailable in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and such Advisors, on the other, in connection with such Advisors' engagement referred to above, subject to the limitation that in no event shall the amount of any such Advisor's contribution to such Claim exceed the amount of Fee actually received by such Advisor from the Company pursuant to such engagement. The Company hereby agrees that the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and each Advisor, on the other, with respect to such Advisor's engagement shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as (a) the total value paid or proposed to be paid or received by the Company or its stockholders, as the case may be, pursuant to the transaction (whether or not consummated) for which the Advisors are engaged to render services bears to (b) the Fee paid or proposed to be paid to such Advisor in connection with such engagement.

The Company's indemnity, reimbursement and contribution obligations under this Agreement (a) shall be in addition to, and shall in no way limit or otherwise adversely affect, any rights that any Indemnified Party may have at law or at equity and (b) shall be effective whether or not the Company is at fault in any way.

**AMENDED AND RESTATED  
CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

February 6, 2019

Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (the "*Corporation*"), DOES HEREBY CERTIFY AS FOLLOWS:

1. The name of the Corporation is "*Monocle Acquisition Corporation*". The original certificate of incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on August 20, 2018 (the "*Original Certificate*").
2. This Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the "*Amended and Restated Certificate*"), which both restates and amends the provisions of the Original Certificate, was duly adopted in accordance with Sections 228, 242 and 245 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, as amended from time to time (the "*DGCL*").
3. This Amended and Restated Certificate shall become effective on the date of filing with the Secretary of State of Delaware.
4. The text of the Original Certificate is hereby restated and amended in its entirety to read as follows:

**ARTICLE I**

**NAME**

The name of the corporation is Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "*Corporation*").

**ARTICLE II**

**PURPOSE**

The purpose of the Corporation is to engage in any lawful act or activity for which corporations may be organized under the DGCL. In addition to the powers and privileges conferred upon the Corporation by law and those incidental thereto, the Corporation shall possess and may exercise all the powers and privileges that are necessary or convenient to the conduct, promotion or attainment of the business or purposes of the Corporation, including, but not limited to, effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization, recapitalization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses (a "*Business Combination*").

**ARTICLE III**

**REGISTERED AGENT**

The address of the Corporation's registered office in the State of Delaware is 251 Little Falls Drive, Wilmington, New Castle County, Delaware, 19808, and the name of the Corporation's registered agent at such address is Corporation Service Company.

---

## ARTICLE IV

### CAPITALIZATION

Section 4.1 Authorized Capital Stock. The total number of shares of all classes of capital stock which the Corporation is authorized to issue is 205,000,000 shares, consisting of (a) 200,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Common Stock**"), and (b) 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Preferred Stock**").

Section 4.2 Preferred Stock. Subject to *Article IX* of this Amended and Restated Certificate, the Board of Directors of the Corporation (the "**Board**") is hereby expressly authorized to provide out of the unissued shares of the Preferred Stock for one or more series of Preferred Stock and to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series and to fix the voting rights, if any, designations, powers, preferences and relative, participating, optional, special and other rights, if any, of each such series and any qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, as shall be stated in the resolution or resolutions adopted by the Board providing for the issuance of such series and included in a certificate of designation (a "**Preferred Stock Designation**") filed pursuant to the DGCL, and the Board is hereby expressly vested with the authority to the full extent provided by law, now or hereafter, to adopt any such resolution or resolutions. The number of authorized shares of Preferred Stock may be increased or decreased (but not below the number of shares thereof then outstanding) by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, without a vote of the holders of the Preferred Stock, or any series thereof, unless a vote of any such holders of Preferred Stock is required pursuant to another provision of this Certificate, including any Preferred Stock Designation.

Section 4.3 Common Stock.

(a) *Voting*.

(i) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of the shares of Common Stock shall exclusively possess all voting power with respect to the Corporation.

(ii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to one vote for each such share on each matter properly submitted to the stockholders of the Corporation on which the holders of the shares of Common Stock are entitled to vote.

(iii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), at any annual or special meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, the holders of the shares of Common Stock shall have the exclusive right to vote for the election of directors and on all other matters properly submitted to a vote of the stockholders of the Corporation. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of the shares of Common Stock shall not be entitled to vote on any amendment to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any amendment to any Preferred Stock Designation) that relates solely to the terms of one or more outstanding series of Preferred Stock if the holders of such affected series of Preferred Stock are entitled, either separately or together with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) or the DGCL.

(b) *Dividends*. Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of *Article IX* hereof, the holders of the shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive such dividends and other distributions (payable in cash, property or capital stock of the Corporation) when, as and if declared thereon by the Board from time to time out of any assets or funds of the Corporation legally available therefor and shall share equally on a per share basis in such dividends and distributions.

(c) Liquidation, Dissolution or Winding Up of the Corporation. Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of *Article IX* hereof, in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Corporation, after payment or provision for payment of the debts and other liabilities of the Corporation, the holders of the shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive all the remaining assets of the Corporation available for distribution to its stockholders, ratably in proportion to the number of shares of Common Stock held by them.

Section 4.4 Rights and Options. The Corporation has the authority to create and issue rights, warrants and options entitling the holders thereof to acquire from the Corporation any shares of its capital stock of any class or classes, with such rights, warrants and options to be evidenced by or in instrument(s) approved by the Board. The Board is empowered to set the exercise price, duration, times for exercise and other terms and conditions of such rights, warrants or options; provided, however, that the consideration to be received for any shares of capital stock issuable upon exercise thereof may not be less than the par value thereof.

## ARTICLE V

### BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Section 5.1 Board Powers. The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed by, or under the direction of, the Board. In addition to the powers and authority expressly conferred upon the Board by statute, this Amended and Restated Certificate or the Bylaws of the Corporation ("*Bylaws*"), the Board is hereby empowered to exercise all such powers and do all such acts and things as may be exercised or done by the Corporation, subject, nevertheless, to the provisions of the DGCL, this Amended and Restated Certificate, and any Bylaws adopted by the stockholders of the Corporation; provided, however, that no Bylaws hereafter adopted by the stockholders of the Corporation shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such Bylaws had not been adopted.

#### Section 5.2 Number, Election and Term.

(a) The number of directors of the Corporation, other than those who may be elected by the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock voting separately by class or series, shall be fixed from time to time exclusively by the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board.

(b) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, the Board shall be divided into two classes, as nearly equal in number as possible and designated Class I and Class II. The Board is authorized to assign members of the Board already in office to Class I or Class II. The term of the initial Class I Directors shall expire at the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate and the term of the initial Class II Directors shall expire at the second annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate. Beginning with the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate, each of the successors elected to replace the class of directors whose term expires at that annual meeting shall be elected for a two-year term or until the election and qualification of their respective successors in office, subject to their earlier death, resignation or removal. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, if the number of directors that constitutes the Board is changed, any increase or decrease shall be apportioned by the Board among the classes so as to maintain the number of directors in each class as nearly equal as possible, but in no case shall a decrease in the number of directors constituting the Board shorten the term of any incumbent director. Subject to the rights of the holders of one or more series of Preferred Stock, voting separately by class or series, to elect directors pursuant to the terms of one or more series of Preferred Stock, the election of directors shall be determined by a plurality of the votes cast by the stockholders present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote thereon. The Board is hereby expressly authorized, by resolution or resolutions thereof, to assign members of the Board already in office to the aforesaid classes at the time this Amended and Restated Certificate (and therefore such classification) becomes effective in accordance with the DGCL.

(c) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, a director shall hold office until the annual meeting for the year in which his or her term expires and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

(d) Unless and except to the extent that the Bylaws shall so require, the election of directors need not be by written ballot. The holders of shares of Common Stock shall not have cumulative voting rights.

Section 5.3 Newly Created Directorships and Vacancies. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, newly created directorships resulting from an increase in the number of directors and any vacancies on the Board resulting from death, resignation, retirement, disqualification, removal or other cause may be filled solely and exclusively by a majority vote of the remaining directors then in office, even if less than a quorum, or by a sole remaining director (and not by stockholders), and any director so chosen shall hold office for the remainder of the full term of the class of directors to which the new directorship was added or in which the vacancy occurred and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

Section 5.4 Removal. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, any or all of the directors may be removed from office at any time, but only for cause and only by the affirmative vote of holders of a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

Section 5.5 Preferred Stock - Directors. Notwithstanding any other provision of this *Article V*, and except as otherwise required by law, whenever the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock shall have the right, voting separately by class or series, to elect one or more directors, the term of office, the filling of vacancies, the removal from office and other features of such directorships shall be governed by the terms of such series of the Preferred Stock as set forth in this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) and such directors shall not be included in any of the classes created pursuant to this *Article V* unless expressly provided by such terms.

## ARTICLE VI

### BYLAWS

In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred upon it by law, the Board shall have the power and is expressly authorized to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the Bylaws by the affirmative vote of a majority of the total number of directors present at a regular or special meeting of the Board at which there is a quorum or by unanimous written consent. The Bylaws also may be adopted, amended, altered or repealed by the stockholders of the Corporation; provided, however, that in addition to any vote of the holders of any class or series of capital stock of the Corporation required by law or by this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, shall be required for the stockholders of the Corporation to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the Bylaws; and provided further, however, that no Bylaws hereafter adopted by the stockholders of the Corporation shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such Bylaws had not been adopted.

## ARTICLE VII

### SPECIAL MEETINGS OF STOCKHOLDERS; ACTION BY WRITTEN CONSENT

Section 7.1 Special Meetings. Subject to the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock, and to the requirements of applicable law, special meetings of stockholders of the Corporation may be called only by the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation, or the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board, and the ability of the stockholders of the Corporation to call a special meeting is hereby specifically denied. Except as provided in the foregoing sentence, special meetings of stockholders of the Corporation may not be called by another person or persons.

Section 7.2 Advance Notice. Advance notice of stockholder nominations for the election of directors and of business to be brought by stockholders before any meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation shall be given in the manner provided in the Bylaws.

Section 7.3 Action by Written Consent. Except as may be otherwise provided for or fixed pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) relating to the rights of the holders of any outstanding series of Preferred Stock, subsequent to the consummation of the Corporation's initial public offering of securities (the "Offering"), any action required or permitted to be taken by the stockholders of the Corporation must be effected by a duly called annual or special meeting of such stockholders and may not be effected by written consent of the stockholders of the Corporation.

## ARTICLE VIII

### LIMITED LIABILITY; INDEMNIFICATION

Section 8.1 Limitation of Director Liability. A director of the Corporation shall not be personally liable to the Corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except to the extent such exemption from liability or limitation thereof is not permitted under the DGCL as the same exists or may hereafter be amended unless a director violated his or her duty of loyalty to the Corporation or its stockholders, acted in bad faith, knowingly or intentionally violated the law, authorized unlawful payments of dividends, unlawful stock purchases or unlawful redemptions, or derived improper personal benefit from his or her actions as a director. Any amendment, modification or repeal of the foregoing sentence shall not adversely affect any right or protection of a director of the Corporation hereunder in respect of any act or omission occurring prior to the time of such amendment, modification or repeal.

#### Section 8.2 Indemnification and Advancement of Expenses

(a) To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, as the same exists or may hereafter be amended, the Corporation shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless each person who is or was made a party or is threatened to be made a party to or is otherwise involved in any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (a "proceeding") by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or, while a director or officer of the Corporation, is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, other enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan (an "indemnitee"), whether the basis of such proceeding is alleged action in an official capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or in any other capacity while serving as a director, officer, employee or agent, against all liability and loss suffered and expenses (including, without limitation, attorneys' fees, judgments, fines, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA) excise taxes and penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred by such indemnitee in connection with such proceeding. The Corporation shall to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law pay the expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an indemnitee in defending or otherwise participating in any proceeding in advance of its final disposition; provided, however, that, to the extent required by applicable law, such payment of expenses in advance of the final disposition of the proceeding shall be made only upon receipt of an undertaking, by or on behalf of the indemnitee, to repay all amounts so advanced if it shall ultimately be determined that the indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified under this Section 8.2 or otherwise. The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred by this Section 8.2 shall be contract rights and such rights shall continue as to an indemnitee who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors and administrators. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 8.2(a), except for proceedings to enforce rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses, the Corporation shall indemnify and advance expenses to an indemnitee in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by such indemnitee only if such proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by the Board.

(b) The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred on any indemnitee by this Section 8.2 shall not be exclusive of any other rights that any indemnitee may have or hereafter acquire under law, this Amended and Restated Certificate, the Bylaws, an agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

(c) Any repeal or amendment of this Section 8.2 by the stockholders of the Corporation or by changes in law, or the adoption of any other provision of this Amended and Restated Certificate inconsistent with this Section 8.2, shall, unless otherwise required by law, be prospective only (except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits the Corporation to provide broader indemnification rights on a retroactive basis than permitted prior thereto), and shall not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing at the time of such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision in respect of any proceeding (regardless of when such proceeding is first threatened, commenced or completed) arising out of, or related to, any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision.

(d) This Section 8.2 shall not limit the right of the Corporation, to the extent and in the manner authorized or permitted by law, to indemnify and to advance expenses to persons other than indemnitees.

## ARTICLE IX

### BUSINESS COMBINATION REQUIREMENTS; EXISTENCE

#### Section 9.1 General.

(a) The provisions of this *Article IX* shall apply during the period commencing upon the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate and terminating upon the consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination and no amendment to this *Article IX* shall be effective prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination unless approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least sixty-five percent (65%) of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock.

(b) Immediately after the Offering, a certain amount of the net offering proceeds received by the Corporation in the Offering (including the proceeds of any exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional units) and certain other amounts specified in the Corporation's registration statement on Form S-1, as initially filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 19, 2018, as amended (the "*Registration Statement*"), shall be deposited in a trust account (the "*Trust Account*"), established for the benefit of the Public Stockholders (as defined below) pursuant to a trust agreement described in the Registration Statement. Except for the withdrawal of interest to pay taxes, none of the funds held in the Trust Account (including the interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account) will be released from the Trust Account until the earliest to occur of (i) the completion of the initial Business Combination, (ii) the redemption of 100% of the Offering Shares (as defined below) if the Corporation is unable to complete its initial Business Combination on or before the Termination Date (as defined below) and (iii) the redemption of Offering Shares in connection with a vote seeking to amend any provisions of this Amended and Restated Certificate relating to pre-initial Business Combination activity (as described in Section 9.7) and related stockholders' rights, including the substance or timing of the Corporation's obligation to redeem the Offering Shares pursuant to Section 9.2(d). Holders of shares of Common Stock included as part of the units sold in the Offering (the "*Offering Shares*") (whether such Offering Shares were purchased in the Offering or in the secondary market following the Offering and whether or not such holders are affiliates of the Corporation, Monocle Partners, LLC (the "*Sponsor*") or officers or directors of the Corporation) are referred to herein as "*Public Stockholders.*"

#### Section 9.2 Redemption Rights.

(a) Prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall provide all holders of Offering Shares with the opportunity to have their Offering Shares redeemed upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination pursuant to, and subject to the limitations of, Sections 9.2(b) and 9.2(c) (such rights of such holders to have their Offering Shares redeemed pursuant to such Sections, the "*Redemption Rights*") hereof for cash equal to the applicable redemption price per share determined in accordance with Section 9.2(b) hereof (the "*Redemption Price*"); provided, however, that the Corporation shall not redeem Offering Shares to the extent that such redemption would result in the Corporation's failure to have net tangible assets (as determined in accordance with Rule 3a51-1(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "*Exchange Act*") (or any successor rule)) of at least \$5,000,001 or any greater net tangible asset or cash requirement upon consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination which may be contained in the agreement relating to the initial Business Combination (such limitation hereinafter called the "*Redemption Limitation*"). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Amended and Restated Certificate, there shall be no Redemption Rights or liquidating distributions with respect to any warrant issued pursuant to the Offering.

(b) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares other than in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination with a proxy solicitation pursuant to Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act (or any successor rules or regulations) and filing proxy materials with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”), the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Tender Offer Rules**”) which it shall commence prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination and shall file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination that contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the Redemption Rights as is required under Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Proxy Solicitation Rules**”), even if such information is not required under the Tender Offer Rules; provided, however, that if a stockholder vote is required by law to approve the proposed initial Business Combination, or the Corporation decides to submit the proposed initial Business Combination to the stockholders for their approval for business or other legal reasons, the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the Proxy Solicitation Rules (and not the Tender Offer Rules) at a price per share equal to the Redemption Price calculated in accordance with the following provisions of this Section 9.2(b). In the event that the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with the Tender Offer Rules, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares tendering their Offering Shares pursuant to such tender offer shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing: (i) the aggregate amount on deposit in the Trust Account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, including interest which shall be net of taxes payable, by (ii) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares. If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on the proposed initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares exercising their Redemption Rights shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (a) the aggregate amount on deposit in the Trust Account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, including interest which shall be net of taxes payable, by (b) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares.

(c) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, a Public Stockholder, together with any affiliate of such stockholder or any other person with whom such stockholder is acting in concert or as a “**group**” (as defined under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), shall be restricted from seeking Redemption Rights with respect to more than an aggregate of 15% of the Offering Shares without the prior consent of the Corporation.

(d) In the event that the Corporation has not consummated an initial Business Combination within 21 months from the closing of the Offering, the Board may extend the period of time to consummate an initial Business Combination by an additional three months (the “**Extension**”), for a total of 24 months to consummate an initial Business Combination (the latest such date being referred to as the “**Termination Date**”); provided that (i) the Sponsor (or its affiliates or designees) has deposited into the Trust Account \$1,500,000 (or up to \$1,725,000 if the underwriters’ option to purchase additional units is exercised in full) in exchange for a non-interest bearing, unsecured promissory note and (ii) the procedures relating to the Extension, as set forth in the Trust Agreement, have been complied with. The gross proceeds from the issuance of such promissory note will be added to the proceeds from the Offering held in the Trust Account and shall be used to fund the redemption of the Offering Shares in accordance with this Section 9.2(d). In the event that the Corporation has not consummated an initial Business Combination by the Termination Date, the Corporation shall (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem 100% of the Offering Shares in consideration of a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (A) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which shall be net of taxes payable and less up to \$100,000 to pay dissolution expenses), by (B) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish rights of the Public Stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the remaining stockholders and the Board in accordance with applicable law, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Corporation’s obligations under the DGCL to provide for claims of creditors and other requirements of applicable law.



(e) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall consummate such proposed initial Business Combination only if (i) such initial Business Combination is approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of the Common Stock that are voted at a stockholder meeting held to consider such initial Business Combination and (ii) the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

(f) If the Corporation conducts a tender offer pursuant to Section 9.2(b), the Corporation shall consummate the proposed initial Business Combination only if the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

Section 9.3 Distributions from the Trust Account

(a) A Public Stockholder shall be entitled to receive funds from the Trust Account only as provided in Sections 9.2(a), 9.2(b), 9.2(d) or 9.7 hereof. In no other circumstances shall a Public Stockholder have any right or interest of any kind in or to distributions from the Trust Account, and no stockholder other than a Public Stockholder shall have any interest in or to the Trust Account.

(b) Each Public Stockholder that does not exercise its Redemption Rights shall retain its interest in the Corporation and shall be deemed to have given its consent to the release of the remaining funds in the Trust Account to the Corporation, and following payment to any Public Stockholders exercising their Redemption Rights, the remaining funds in the Trust Account shall be released to the Corporation.

(c) The exercise by a Public Stockholder of the Redemption Rights shall be conditioned on such Public Stockholder following the specific procedures for redemptions set forth by the Corporation in any applicable tender offer or proxy materials sent to the Public Stockholders relating to such proposed initial Business Combination. Payment of the amounts necessary to satisfy the Redemption Rights properly exercised shall be made as promptly as practical after the consummation of the initial Business Combination.

Section 9.4 Share Issuances. Prior to the consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall not issue any additional shares of capital stock of the Corporation that would entitle the holders thereof to receive funds from the Trust Account or vote on any initial Business Combination, on any pre-Business Combination activity or on any amendment to this *Article IX*.

Section 9.5 Transactions with Affiliates. In the event the Corporation enters into an initial Business Combination with a target business that is affiliated with the Sponsor, or the directors or officers of the Corporation, the Corporation, or a committee of the independent directors of the Corporation, shall obtain an opinion from an independent accounting firm or an independent investment banking firm that is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority that such Business Combination is fair to the Corporation from a financial point of view.

Section 9.6 No Transactions with Other Blank Check Companies. The Corporation shall not enter into an initial Business Combination with another blank check company or a similar company with nominal operations.

Section 9.7 Additional Redemption Rights. If, in accordance with Section 9.1(a), any amendment is made to this *Article IX*, the Public Stockholders shall be provided with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon the approval of any such amendment, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest which shall be net of taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares. The Corporation's ability to provide such opportunity is subject to the Redemption Limitation.

Section 9.8 Minimum Value of Target. The initial Business Combination must occur with one or more target businesses that together have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the Trust Account (excluding any deferred underwriting commissions and taxes payable on interest earned) at the time of the agreement to enter into the Business Combination.

## ARTICLE X

### CORPORATE OPPORTUNITY

The Corporation renounces, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any interest or expectancy of the Corporation in, or in being offered an opportunity to participate in, any Excluded Opportunity pursuant to Section 122(17) of the DGCL. An “**Excluded Opportunity**” is any matter, transaction or interest that is presented to, or acquired, created or developed by, or which otherwise comes into the possession of (i) any director of the Corporation who is not an employee of the Corporation or any of its subsidiaries, or (ii) any holder of Common Stock or Preferred Stock or any partner, member, director, stockholder, employee or agent of any such holder, other than someone who is an employee of the Corporation or any of its subsidiaries (collectively, “**Covered Persons**”), unless such matter, transaction or interest is presented to, or acquired, created or developed by, or otherwise comes into the possession of, a Covered Person expressly and solely in such Covered Person’s capacity as a director of the Corporation, such opportunity is one the Corporation is legally and contractually permitted to undertake and would otherwise be reasonable for the Corporation to pursue, and to the extent the director is permitted to refer that opportunity to the Corporation without violating any legal or contractual obligation. Any amendment, repeal or modification of the foregoing provisions of this *Article X* shall not adversely affect any right or protection of any director, officer or other agent of the Corporation existing at the time of such amendment, repeal or modification.

## ARTICLE XI

### AMENDMENT OF AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

The Corporation reserves the right at any time and from time to time to amend, alter, change or repeal any provision contained in this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), and other provisions authorized by the laws of the State of Delaware at the time in force that may be added or inserted, in the manner now or hereafter prescribed by this Amended and Restated Certificate and the DGCL; and, except as set forth in *Article VIII*, all rights, preferences and privileges of whatever nature herein conferred upon stockholders, directors or any other persons by and pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate in its present form or as hereafter amended are granted subject to the right reserved in this *Article XI*; provided, however, that *Article IX* of this Amended and Restated Certificate may be amended only as provided therein.

## ARTICLE XII

### EXCLUSIVE FORUM FOR CERTAIN LAWSUITS

Section 12.1 Forum. Unless the Corporation consents in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, and except as otherwise set forth in the immediately following sentence, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware shall be the sole and exclusive forum for any stockholder (including a beneficial owner) to bring (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on behalf of the Corporation, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee of the Corporation to the Corporation or the Corporation’s stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or this Amended and Restated Certificate or the Bylaws, or (iv) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees governed by the internal affairs doctrine, except for, as to each of (i) through (iv) above, any claim as to which the Court of Chancery determines that there is an indispensable party not subject to the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery (and the indispensable party does not consent to the personal jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery within ten days following such determination), which is vested in the exclusive jurisdiction of a court or forum other than the Court of Chancery, or for which the Court of Chancery does not have subject matter jurisdiction. Notwithstanding the foregoing, (a) the provisions of this Section 12.1 will not apply to suits brought to enforce any liability or duty created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction and (b) unless the Corporation consents in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the federal district courts of the United States of America shall be the exclusive forum for the resolution of any complaint asserting a cause of action against the Corporation or any director, officer, employee or agent of the Corporation and arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

Section 12.2 Consent to Jurisdiction. If any action the subject matter of which is within the scope of Section 12.1 immediately above is filed in a court other than a court located within the State of Delaware (a "**Foreign Action**") in the name of any stockholder, such stockholder shall be deemed to have consented to (i) the personal jurisdiction of the state and federal courts located within the State of Delaware in connection with any action brought in any such court to enforce Section 12.1 immediately above (an "**FSC Enforcement Action**") and (ii) having service of process made upon such stockholder in any such FSC Enforcement Action by service upon such stockholder's counsel in the Foreign Action as agent for such stockholder.

### ARTICLE XIII

#### SEVERABILITY

If any provision or provisions (or any part thereof) of this Amended and Restated Certificate shall be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable as applied to any person, entity or circumstance for any reason whatsoever, then, to the fullest extent permitted by law, (i) the validity, legality and enforceability of such provisions in any other circumstance and of the remaining provisions of this Amended and Restated Certificate (including, without limitation, each portion of any paragraph of this Amended and Restated Certificate containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable that is not itself held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable) and the application of such provision to other persons or entities and circumstances shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby, and (ii) the provisions of this Amended and Restated Certificate (including, without limitation, each portion of any paragraph of this Amended and Restated Certificate containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable) shall be construed so as to permit the Corporation to protect its directors, officers, employees and agents from personal liability in respect of their good faith service or for the benefit of the Corporation to the fullest extent permitted by law.

### ARTICLE XIV

#### APPLICATION OF DGCL SECTION 203

Section 14.1 Section 203 of the DGCL. The Corporation hereby expressly elects not to be governed by Section 203 of the DGCL.

Section 14.2 Limitation on Business Combinations. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Corporation shall not engage in any business combination (as defined below), at any point in time at which the Corporation's Common Stock is registered under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act with any interested stockholder (as defined below) for a period of three (3) years following the time that such stockholder became an interested stockholder, unless:

(a) prior to such time, the Board approved either the business combination or the transaction which resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, or

(b) upon consummation of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least eighty-five percent (85%) of the voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding for purposes of determining the voting stock outstanding (but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder) those shares owned by (i) persons who are directors and also officers of the Corporation and (ii) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer, or

(c) at or subsequent to that time, the business combination is approved by the Board and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66-2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

Section 14.3. Certain Definitions. Solely for purposes of this *Article XIV*, references to:

(a) “affiliate” means a person that directly, or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls, or is controlled by, or is under common control with, another person.

(b) “associate,” when used to indicate a relationship with any person, means: (i) any corporation, partnership, unincorporated association or other entity of which such person is a director, officer or partner or is, directly or indirectly, the owner of twenty percent (20%) or more of any class of voting stock; (ii) any trust or other estate in which such person has at least a twenty percent (20%) beneficial interest or as to which such person serves as trustee or in a similar fiduciary capacity; and (iii) any relative or spouse of such person, or any relative of such spouse, who has the same residence as such person.

(c) “business combination,” when used in reference to the Corporation and any interested stockholder of the Corporation, means:

(i) any merger or consolidation of the Corporation or any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of the Corporation (a) with the interested stockholder, or (b) with any other corporation, partnership, unincorporated association or other entity if the merger or consolidation is caused by the interested stockholder and as a result of such merger or consolidation Section 14.2 is not applicable to the surviving entity;

(ii) any sale, lease, exchange, mortgage, pledge, transfer or other disposition (in one transaction or a series of transactions), except proportionately as a stockholder of the Corporation, to or with the interested stockholder, whether as part of a dissolution or otherwise, of assets of the Corporation or of any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of the Corporation which assets have an aggregate market value equal to ten percent (10%) or more of either the aggregate market value of all the assets of the Corporation determined on a consolidated basis or the aggregate market value of all the outstanding stock of the Corporation;

(iii) any transaction which results in the issuance or transfer by the Corporation or by any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of the Corporation of any stock of the Corporation or of such subsidiary to the interested stockholder, except: (a) pursuant to the exercise, exchange or conversion of securities exercisable for, exchangeable for or convertible into stock of the Corporation or any such subsidiary which securities were outstanding prior to the time that the interested stockholder became such; (b) pursuant to a merger under Section 251(g) of the DGCL; (c) pursuant to a dividend or distribution paid or made, or the exercise, exchange or conversion of securities exercisable for, exchangeable for or convertible into stock of the Corporation or any such subsidiary which security is distributed, pro rata to all stockholders of a class or series of stock of the Corporation subsequent to the time the interested stockholder became such; (d) pursuant to an exchange offer by the Corporation to purchase stock made on the same terms to all stockholders of said stock; or (e) any issuance or transfer of stock by the Corporation; provided, however, that in no case under items (c)-(e) of this subsection (iii) shall there be an increase in the interested stockholder’s proportionate share of the stock of any class or series of the Corporation or of the voting stock of the Corporation (except as a result of immaterial changes due to fractional share adjustments); or

(iv) any transaction involving the Corporation or any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of the Corporation which has the effect, directly or indirectly, of increasing the proportionate share of the stock of any class or series, or securities convertible into the stock of any class or series, of the Corporation or of any such subsidiary which is owned by the interested stockholder, except as a result of immaterial changes due to fractional share adjustments or as a result of any purchase or redemption of any shares of stock not caused, directly or indirectly, by the interested stockholder.

(d) “control,” including the terms “controlling,” “controlled by” and “under common control with,” means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of a person, whether through the ownership of voting stock, by contract, or otherwise. A person who is the owner of twenty percent (20%) or more of the voting power of the outstanding voting stock of the Corporation, partnership, unincorporated association or other entity shall be presumed to have control of such entity, in the absence of proof by a preponderance of the evidence to the contrary. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a presumption of control shall not apply where such person holds voting stock, in good faith and not for the purpose of circumventing this *Article XIV*, as an agent, bank, broker, nominee, custodian or trustee for one or more owners who do not individually or as a group have control of such entity.

(e) “Exempted Person” means Cowen Investments II LLC, the Sponsor and their respective affiliates, any of their respective direct or indirect transferees of at least 15% of the Corporation’s outstanding common stock and any “group” of which any such person is a part under Rule 13d-5 of the Exchange Act.

(f) “interested stockholder” means any person (other than the Corporation or any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of the Corporation) that (i) is the owner of fifteen percent (15%) or more of the voting stock of the Corporation, or (ii) is an affiliate or associate of the Corporation and was the owner of fifteen percent (15%) or more of the voting stock of the Corporation at any time within the three (3) year period immediately prior to the date on which it is sought to be determined whether such person is an interested stockholder; and the affiliates and associates of such person; but “interested stockholder” shall not include (a) any Exempted Person, or (b) any person whose ownership of shares in excess of the fifteen percent (15%) limitation set forth herein is the result of any action taken solely by the Corporation; provided that with respect to clause (b) such person shall be an interested stockholder if thereafter such person acquires additional shares of voting stock of the Corporation, except as a result of further corporate action not caused, directly or indirectly, by such person. For the purpose of determining whether a person is an interested stockholder, the voting stock of the Corporation deemed to be outstanding shall include stock deemed to be owned by the person through application of the definition of “owner” below but shall not include any other unissued stock of the Corporation which may be issuable pursuant to any agreement, arrangement or understanding, or upon exercise of conversion rights, warrants or options, or otherwise.

(g) “owner,” including the terms “own” and “owned,” when used with respect to any stock, means a person that individually or with or through any of its affiliates or associates:

(i) beneficially owns such stock, directly or indirectly; or

(ii) has (a) the right to acquire such stock (whether such right is exercisable immediately or only after the passage of time) pursuant to any agreement, arrangement or understanding, or upon the exercise of conversion rights, exchange rights, warrants or options, or otherwise; provided, however, that a person shall not be deemed the owner of stock tendered pursuant to a tender or exchange offer made by such person or any of such person’s affiliates or associates until such tendered stock is accepted for purchase or exchange; or (b) the right to vote such stock pursuant to any agreement, arrangement or understanding; provided, however, that a person shall not be deemed the owner of any stock because of such person’s right to vote such stock if the agreement, arrangement or understanding to vote such stock arises solely from a revocable proxy or consent given in response to a proxy or consent solicitation made to ten (10) or more persons; or

(iii) has any agreement, arrangement or understanding for the purpose of acquiring, holding, voting (except voting pursuant to a revocable proxy or consent as described in item (b) of subsection (ii) above), or disposing of such stock with any other person that beneficially owns, or whose affiliates or associates beneficially own, directly or indirectly, such stock.

(h) “person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, unincorporated association or other entity.

(i) “stock” means, with respect to any corporation, capital stock and, with respect to any other entity, any equity interest.

(j) “voting stock” means stock of any class or series entitled to vote generally in the election of directors.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Monocle Acquisition Corporation has caused this Amended and Restated Certificate to be duly executed and acknowledged in its name and on its behalf by an authorized officer as of the date first set forth above.

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler

Name: Eric J. Zahler

Title: President and Chief Executive  
Officer

[Signature Page to Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation]

---

## WARRANT AGREEMENT

between

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

and

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER &amp; TRUST COMPANY

THIS WARRANT AGREEMENT (this "**Agreement**"), dated as of February 6, 2019, is by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (the "**Warrant Agent**").

WHEREAS, on February 6, 2019, the Company entered into those certain Unit Purchase Agreements with Monocle Partners, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "**Sponsor**"), and Cowen Investments II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("**Cowen Investments**" and, together with the Sponsor, the "**Founders**"), pursuant to which agreements the Sponsor and Cowen Investments agreed to purchase an aggregate of 650,000 private units (or up to 717,500 private units if the underwriters' Over-allotment Option (as defined below) is exercised in full) and simultaneously with the closing of the Offering (as defined below) (and any closing of the underwriters' Over-allotment Option, if applicable) bearing the legend set forth in Exhibit B hereto (the "**Private Placement Units**") at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Private Placement Unit. Each Private Placement Unit consists of one share of the Company's Common Stock (as defined below) and one redeemable warrant (the "**Private Placement Warrants**"). Each Private Placement Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of the Company's Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment, terms and limitations as described the Company's Registration Statement (as defined below) and Prospectus (as defined below) for the Offering; and

WHEREAS, in order to finance the Company's transaction costs in connection with an intended initial Business Combination (as defined below), the Sponsor or an affiliate of the Sponsor or certain of the Company's officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan the Company funds as the Company may require, of which up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into up to an additional 150,000 Private Placement Units at a price of \$10.00 per Private Placement Unit; and

WHEREAS, the Company is engaged in an initial public offering (the "**Offering**") of units of the Company's equity securities, each such unit comprised of one share of Common Stock and one Public Warrant (as defined below) (the "**Units**") and, in connection therewith, has determined to issue and deliver up to 17,250,000 warrants (including up to 2,250,000 warrants subject to the Over-allotment Option) to public investors in the Offering (the "**Public Warrants**" and, together with the Private Placement Warrants, the "**Warrants**"). Each Public Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (**Common Stock**), for \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as described herein; and

WHEREAS, the Company has filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**") a registration statement on Form S-1, File No. 333-228470 (the "**Registration Statement**") and prospectus (the "**Prospectus**"), for the registration, under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), of the Units, the Public Warrants and the shares of Common Stock included in the Units; and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing to so act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, redemption and exercise of the Warrants; and

WHEREAS, the Company desires to provide for the form and provisions of the Warrants, the terms upon which they shall be issued and exercised, and the respective rights, limitation of rights, and immunities of the Company, the Warrant Agent, and the holders of the Warrants; and

---

WHEREAS, all acts and things have been done and performed which are necessary to make the Warrants, when executed on behalf of the Company and countersigned by or on behalf of the Warrant Agent, as provided herein, the valid, binding and legal obligations of the Company, and to authorize the execution and delivery of this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Appointment of Warrant Agent. The Company hereby appoints the Warrant Agent to act as agent for the Company for the Warrants, and the Warrant Agent hereby accepts such appointment and agrees to perform the same in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.

2. Warrants.

2.1 Form of Warrant. Each Warrant shall be issued in registered form only.

2.2 Effect of Countersignature. If a physical certificate is issued, unless and until countersigned by the Warrant Agent pursuant to this Agreement, a Warrant shall be invalid and of no effect and may not be exercised by the holder thereof.

2.3 Registration.

2.3.1 Warrant Register. The Warrant Agent shall maintain books (the "**Warrant Register**"), for the registration of original issuance and the registration of transfer of the Warrants. Upon the initial issuance of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall issue and register the Warrants in the names of the respective holders thereof in such denominations and otherwise in accordance with instructions delivered to the Warrant Agent by the Company. Ownership of beneficial interests in the Public Warrants shall be shown on, and the transfer of such ownership shall be effected through, records maintained by institutions that have accounts with The Depository Trust Company (the "**Depository**") (such institution, with respect to a Warrant in its account, a "**Participant**").

If the Depository subsequently ceases to make its book-entry settlement system available for the Public Warrants, the Company may instruct the Warrant Agent regarding making other arrangements for book-entry settlement. In the event that the Public Warrants are not eligible for, or it is no longer necessary to have the Public Warrants available in, book-entry form, the Warrant Agent shall provide written instructions to the Depository to deliver to the Warrant Agent for cancellation each book-entry Public Warrant, and the Company shall instruct the Warrant Agent to deliver to the Depository definitive certificates in physical form evidencing such Warrants which shall be in the form annexed hereto as Exhibit A.

Physical certificates, if issued, shall be signed by, or bear the facsimile signature of, the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Secretary or other principal officer of the Company. In the event the person whose facsimile signature has been placed upon any Warrant shall have ceased to serve in the capacity in which such person signed the Warrant before such Warrant is issued, it may be issued with the same effect as if he or she had not ceased to be such at the date of issuance.

2.3.2 Registered Holder. Prior to due presentment for registration of transfer of any Warrant, the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the person in whose name such Warrant is registered in the Warrant Register (the "**Registered Holder**") as the absolute owner of such Warrant and of each Warrant represented thereby (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing on any physical certificate made by anyone other than the Company or the Warrant Agent), for the purpose of any exercise thereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.



2.4 Detachability of Warrants. The shares of Common Stock and Public Warrants comprising the Units shall begin separate trading on the 52nd day following the date of the Prospectus or, if such 52nd day is not on a day, other than a Saturday, Sunday or federal holiday, on which banks in New York City are generally open for normal business (a “**Business Day**”), then on the immediately succeeding Business Day following such date, or earlier (the “**Detachment Date**”) with the consent of Cowen and Company, LLC, as representative of the several underwriters of the Offering, but in no event shall the Common Stock and the Public Warrants comprising the Units be separately traded until (A) the Company has filed a current report on Form 8-K with the Commission containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the receipt by the Company of the gross proceeds of the Offering, including the proceeds received by the Company from the exercise by the underwriters of their right to purchase additional Units in the Offering (the “**Over-allotment Option**”), if the Over-allotment Option is exercised prior to the filing of the Form 8-K, and (B) the Company issues a press release and files with the Commission a current report on Form 8-K announcing when such separate trading shall begin.

2.5 No Fractional Warrants Other Than as Part of Units. The Company shall not issue fractional Warrants other than as part of Units and Private Placement Units, each of which is comprised of one share of Common Stock and one Warrant. If, upon the detachment of Warrants from Units or Private Placement Units, as applicable, or otherwise, a holder of Warrants would be entitled to receive a fractional Warrant, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number the number of Warrants to be issued to such holder.

2.6 Private Placement Warrants.

2.6.1 The Private Placement Warrants (including the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants) shall be identical to the Public Warrants, except that so long as they are held by the Founders or any of their respective Permitted Transferees (as defined below) the Private Placement Warrants: (i) may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) hereof; (ii) shall be subject to the Lock-up (as defined below), (iii) with respect to Private Placement Warrants held by Cowen Investments, will not be exercisable more than five years from the effective date of the Registration Statement in accordance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2)(G)(i) and (iv) shall not be redeemable by the Company; provided, however, that in the case of (ii), the Private Placement Warrants and any shares of Common Stock held by the Founders or any of their respective Permitted Transferees and issued upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants may be transferred by the holders thereof:

- (a) to any persons (including their affiliates and members) participating in the private placement of the Private Placement Units;
- (b) to the Company’s officers, directors or employees;
- (c) in the case of an entity, as a distribution to its partners, stockholders or members upon liquidation;
- (d) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of the individual’s immediate family, to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of the individual’s immediate family, or for estate planning purposes;
- (e) in the case of an individual, by virtue of laws of descent and distribution upon death of the individual;
- (f) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order;
- (g) by pledges to secure obligations incurred in connection with purchases of the Company’s securities;
- (h) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of the Company’s initial Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the securities were originally purchased;
- (i) to the Company for no value for cancellation in connection with the consummation of the initial Business Combination; or
- (j) in the event of the Company’s liquidation prior to the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination;

provided, however, that, in the case of clauses (a) through (h), these transferees (the *“Permitted Transferees”*) must enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the transfer restrictions in this Agreement.

For the purposes of this Agreement, the term *“Lock-up”* means, with respect to all of the Private Placement Units, and the underlying Private Placement Warrants and shares of Common Stock underlying them (collectively, the *“Private Placement Securities”*), that such Private Placement Securities may not be transferred, assigned or sold until the earlier to occur of: (x) one year after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination (as defined below) and (y) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction after its initial Business Combination that results in all of its stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property; provided, that, notwithstanding the foregoing, (A) if the last sale price of the Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company’s initial Business Combination, the Private Placement Securities will be released from the Lock-up, subject to the following clause (B), if applicable; and (B) with respect to the Private Placement Securities held by the Company’s executive officers and directors, and the Founders, and their Permitted Transferees, notwithstanding any release from the Lock-up described in clause (A), the Private Placement Securities may not be sold, transferred, assigned, pledged or hypothecated for 180 days immediately following the effective date of the Initial Registration Statement except to any underwriter or selected dealer participating in the Offering and the bona fide officers or partners of the applicable Founder and any such participating underwriter or selected dealer, nor may they be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the economic disposition of the Private Placement Securities by any person during such 180-day period.

### 3. Terms and Exercise of Warrants.

3.1 Warrant Price. Each Warrant shall, when countersigned by the Warrant Agent, entitle the Registered Holder thereof, subject to the provisions of such Warrant and of this Agreement, to purchase from the Company the number of shares of Common Stock stated therein, at the price of \$11.50 per share, subject to the adjustments provided in Section 4 hereof and in the last sentence of this Section 3.1. The term “Warrant Price” as used in this Agreement shall mean the price per share (including in cash or by payment of Warrants pursuant to a “cashless exercise,” to the extent permitted hereunder) at which shares of Common Stock may be purchased at the time a Warrant is exercised. The Company in its sole discretion may lower the Warrant Price at any time prior to the Expiration Date (as defined below) for a period of not less than twenty (20) Business Days, provided, that the Company shall provide at least twenty (20) days prior written notice of such reduction to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such reduction shall be identical among all of the Warrants.

3.2 Duration of Warrants. A Warrant may be exercised only during the period (the *“Exercise Period”*) commencing on the later of: (i) the date that is thirty (30) days after the first date on which the Company completes a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses (a *“Business Combination”*), and (ii) the date that is twelve (12) months from the date of the closing of the Offering, and terminating at 5:00 p.m., New York City time on the earlier to occur of: (x) the date that is five (5) years after the date on which the Company completes its Business Combination, (y) the liquidation of the Company in accordance with the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as amended from time to time, if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination, provided, however, that the Private Placement Warrants issued to Cowen Investments will not be exercisable more than five years from the effective date of the Registration Statement in accordance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2)(G)(i); or (z) other than with respect to the Private Placement Warrants then held by the Founders or any of their Permitted Transferees, the Redemption Date (as defined below) as provided in Section 6.2 hereof (the *“Expiration Date”*); provided, however, that the exercise of any Warrant shall be subject to the satisfaction of any applicable conditions, as set forth in subsection 3.3.2 below with respect to an effective registration statement. Except with respect to the right to receive the Redemption Price (as defined below) (other than with respect to a Private Placement Warrant then held by the Founders or any of their Permitted Transferees) in the event of a redemption (as set forth in Section 6 hereof), each outstanding Warrant (other than a Private Placement Warrant held by the Founders or any of their Permitted Transferees in the event of a redemption) not exercised on or before the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights thereunder and all rights in respect thereof under this Agreement shall cease at 5:00 p.m. New York City time on the Expiration Date. The Company in its sole discretion may extend the duration of the Warrants by delaying the Expiration Date; provided, that the Company shall provide at least twenty (20) days prior written notice of any such extension to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such extension shall be identical in duration among all the Warrants.

### 3.3 Exercise of Warrants.

3.3.1 Payment. Subject to the provisions of the Warrant and this Agreement, a Warrant, when countersigned by the Warrant Agent, may be exercised by the Registered Holder thereof by surrendering it, at the office of the Warrant Agent, or at the office of its successor as Warrant Agent, in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, with the subscription form, as set forth in the Warrant, duly executed, and by paying in full the Warrant Price for each full share of Common Stock as to which the Warrant is exercised and any and all applicable taxes due in connection with the exercise of the Warrant, the exchange of the Warrant for the shares of Common Stock and the issuance of such shares of Common Stock, as follows:

(a) in lawful money of the United States, in good certified check or wire payable to the Warrant Agent;

(b) in the event of a redemption pursuant to Section 6 hereof in which the Company's board of directors (the "**Board**") has elected to require all holders of the Warrants to exercise such Warrants on a "cashless basis," by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(b)) over the exercise price of the Warrants by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.3, the "Fair Market Value" shall mean the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of the Warrants, pursuant to Section 6 hereof;

(c) with respect to any Private Placement Warrant, so long as such Private Placement Warrant is held by the Founders or their Permitted Transferees, by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(c)) over the exercise price of the Warrants by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(c), the "Fair Market Value" shall mean the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of exercise of the Private Placement Warrant is sent to the Warrant Agent; or

(d) as provided in Section 7.4 hereof.

3.3.2 Issuance of Shares of Common Stock on Exercise. As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant and the clearance of the funds in payment of the Warrant Price (if payment is pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(a)), the Company shall issue to the Registered Holder of such Warrant a book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for the number of full shares of Common Stock to which he, she or it is entitled, registered in such name or names as may be directed by him, her or it, and if such Warrant shall not have been exercised in full, a new book-entry position or countersigned Warrant, as applicable, for the number of shares of Common Stock as to which such Warrant shall not have been exercised. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall not be obligated to deliver any shares of Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a Warrant and shall have no obligation to settle such Warrant exercise unless a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of Common Stock underlying the Public Warrants is then effective and a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to the Company's satisfying its obligations under Section 7.4. No Warrant shall be exercisable and the Company shall not be obligated to issue shares of Common Stock upon exercise of a Warrant unless the shares of Common Stock issuable upon such Warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt from registration or qualification under the securities laws of the state of residence of the Registered Holder of the Warrants. In the event that the conditions in the two immediately preceding sentences are not satisfied with respect to a Warrant, the holder of such Warrant shall not be entitled to exercise such Warrant and such Warrant may have no value and expire worthless, in which case the purchaser of a Unit containing such Public Warrants shall have paid the full purchase price for the Unit solely for the shares of Common Stock underlying such Unit. In no event will the Company be required to net cash settle any Warrant. The Company may require holders of Public Warrants to settle the Warrant on a "cashless basis" pursuant to Section 7.4. If, by reason of any exercise of warrants on a "cashless basis", the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number, the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

3.3.3 Valid Issuance. All shares of Common Stock issued upon the proper exercise of a Warrant in conformity with this Agreement shall be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

3.3.4 Date of Issuance. Each person in whose name any book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for shares of Common Stock is issued shall for all purposes be deemed to have become the holder of record of such shares of Common Stock on the date on which the Warrant, or book-entry position representing such Warrant, was surrendered and payment of the Warrant Price was made, irrespective of the date of delivery of such certificate in the case of a certificated Warrant, except that, if the date of such surrender and payment is a date when the share transfer books of the Company or book-entry system of the Warrant Agent are closed, such person shall be deemed to have become the holder of such shares of Common Stock at the close of business on the next succeeding date on which the share transfer books or book-entry system are open.

3.3.5 Maximum Percentage. A holder of a Warrant may notify the Company in writing in the event it elects to be subject to the provisions contained in this subsection 3.3.5; however, no holder of a Warrant shall be subject to this subsection 3.3.5 unless he, she or it makes such election. If the election is made by a holder, the Warrant Agent shall not effect the exercise of the holder's Warrant, and such holder shall not have the right to exercise such Warrant, to the extent that after giving effect to such exercise, such person and any of its affiliates or any other person subject to aggregation with such person for purposes of the "beneficial ownership" test under Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "*Exchange Act*"), or any "group" (within the meaning of Section 13 of the Exchange Act) of which such person is or may be deemed to be a part, would beneficially own (within the meaning of Section 13 of the Exchange Act) (or to the extent that for any reason the equivalent calculation under Section 16 of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder would result in a higher ownership percentage, such higher percentage would be) in excess of 4.9% or 9.8% (as specified by the holder) (the "Maximum Percentage") of the shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to such exercise. For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates or any such other person or group shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrant with respect to which the determination of such sentence is being made, but shall exclude shares of Common Stock that would be issuable upon (x) exercise of the remaining, unexercised portion of the Warrant beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates and (y) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or unconverted portion of any other securities of the Company beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates (including, without limitation, any convertible notes or convertible preferred stock or warrants) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this paragraph, beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act. For purposes of the Warrant, in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (1) the Company's most recent annual report on Form 10-K, quarterly report on Form 10-Q, current report on Form 8-K or other public filing with the Commission as the case may be, (2) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (3) any other notice by the Company or Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as transfer agent (the "*Transfer Agent*"), setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. For any reason at any time, upon the written request of the holder of the Warrant, the Company shall, within two (2) Business Days, confirm orally and in writing to such holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of equity securities of the Company by the holder and its affiliates since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. By written notice to the Company, the holder of a Warrant may from time to time increase or decrease the Maximum Percentage applicable to such holder to any other percentage specified in such notice; provided, however, that any such increase shall not be effective until the sixty-first (61st) day after such notice is delivered to the Company.

4. Adjustments.

4.1 Stock Dividends.

4.1.1 Split-Ups. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 below, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is increased by a stock dividend payable in shares of Common Stock, or by a split-up of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such stock dividend, split-up or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be increased in proportion to such increase in the outstanding shares of Common Stock. A rights offering to holders of the Common Stock entitling holders to purchase shares of Common Stock at a price less than the "Fair Market Value" (as defined below) shall be deemed a stock dividend of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the product of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock actually sold in such rights offering (or issuable under any other equity securities sold in such rights offering that are convertible into or exercisable for the shares of Common Stock) multiplied by (ii) one (1) minus the quotient of (x) the price per share of Common Stock paid in such rights offering divided by (y) the Fair Market Value. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.1, (i) if the rights offering is for securities convertible into or exercisable for Common Stock, in determining the price payable for shares of Common Stock, there shall be taken into account any consideration received for such rights, as well as any additional amount payable upon exercise or conversion and (ii) "Fair Market Value" means the volume weighted average per share price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the first date on which the shares of Common Stock trade on the applicable exchange or in the applicable market, regular way, without the right to receive such rights.

4.1.2 Extraordinary Dividends. If the Company, at any time while the Warrants are outstanding and unexpired, shall pay a dividend or make a distribution in cash, securities or other assets to the holders of the Common Stock on account of such shares of Common Stock (or other shares of the Company's capital stock into which the Warrants are convertible), other than (a) as described in subsection 4.1.1 above, (b) Ordinary Cash Dividends (as defined below), (c) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of the Common Stock in connection with a proposed initial Business Combination, (d) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would affect the Company's pre-initial business combination activity and related stockholders' rights, including the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of its public shares of Common Stock if the Company does not complete its initial business combination within the required time period, or, (e) in connection with the redemption of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering upon the failure of the Company to complete its initial Business Combination and any subsequent distribution of its assets upon its liquidation (any such non-excluded event being referred to herein as an "**Extraordinary Dividend**"), then the Warrant Price shall be decreased, effective immediately after the effective date of such Extraordinary Dividend, by the amount of cash and/or the fair market value (as determined by the Board, in good faith) of any securities or other assets paid on each share of Common Stock in respect of such Extraordinary Dividend. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.2, "**Ordinary Cash Dividends**" means any cash dividend or cash distribution which, when combined on a per share basis, with the per share amounts of all other cash dividends and cash distributions paid on the Common Stock during the 365-day period ending on the date of declaration of such dividend or distribution (as adjusted to appropriately reflect any of the events referred to in other subsections of this Section 4 and excluding cash dividends or cash distributions that resulted in an adjustment to the Warrant Price or to the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant) does not exceed \$0.50 (being 5% of the offering price of the Units in the Offering).

4.2 Aggregation of Shares. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 hereof, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is decreased by a consolidation, combination, reverse stock split or reclassification of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such consolidation, combination, reverse stock split, reclassification or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be decreased in proportion to such decrease in outstanding shares of Common Stock.

4.3 Adjustments in Exercise Price. Whenever the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants is adjusted, as provided in subsection 4.1.1 or Section 4.2 above, the Warrant Price shall be adjusted (to the nearest cent) by multiplying such Warrant Price immediately prior to such adjustment by a fraction (x) the numerator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants immediately prior to such adjustment, and (y) the denominator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock so purchasable immediately thereafter.

4.4 Replacement of Securities upon Reorganization, etc. In case of any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (other than a change under subsections 4.1.1 or 4.1.2 or Section 4.2 hereof or that solely affects the par value of such shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another entity or conversion of the Company as another entity (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Company is the continuing corporation and that does not result in any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any sale or conveyance to another corporation or entity of the assets or other property of the Company as an entirety or substantially as an entirety in connection with which the Company is dissolved, the holders of the Warrants shall thereafter have the right to purchase and receive, upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions specified in the Warrants and in lieu of the shares of Common Stock of the Company immediately theretofore purchasable and receivable upon the exercise of the rights represented thereby, the kind and amount of shares of stock or other securities or property (including cash) receivable upon such reclassification, reorganization, merger or consolidation, or upon a dissolution following any such sale or transfer, that the holder of the Warrants would have received if such holder had exercised his, her or its Warrant(s) immediately prior to such event (the “*Alternative Issuance*”); provided, however, that (i) if the holders of the Common Stock were entitled to exercise a right of election as to the kind or amount of securities, cash or other assets receivable upon such consolidation or merger, then the kind and amount of securities, cash or other assets constituting the Alternative Issuance for which each Warrant shall become exercisable shall be deemed to be the weighted average of the kind and amount received per share by the holders of the Common Stock in such consolidation or merger that affirmatively make such election, and (ii) if a tender, exchange or redemption offer shall have been made to and accepted by the holders of the Common Stock (other than a tender, exchange or redemption offer made by the Company in connection with redemption rights held by stockholders of the Company as provided for in the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation or as a result of the repurchase of shares of Common Stock by the Company if a proposed initial Business Combination is presented to the stockholders of the Company for approval) under circumstances in which, upon completion of such tender or exchange offer, the maker thereof, together with members of any group (within the meaning of Rule 13d-5(b)(1) under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) of which such maker is a part, and together with any affiliate or associate of such maker (within the meaning of Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) and any members of any such group of which any such affiliate or associate is a part, own beneficially (within the meaning of Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder of a Warrant shall be entitled to receive as the Alternative Issuance, the highest amount of cash, securities or other property to which such holder would actually have been entitled as a stockholder if such Warrant holder had exercised the Warrant prior to the expiration of such tender or exchange offer, accepted such offer and all of the Common Stock held by such holder had been purchased pursuant to such tender or exchange offer, subject to adjustments (from and after the consummation of such tender or exchange offer) as nearly equivalent as possible to the adjustments provided for in this Section 4; provided, further, that if less than 70% of the consideration receivable by the holders of the Common Stock in the applicable event is payable in the form of common stock in the successor entity that is listed for trading on a national securities exchange or is quoted in an established over-the-counter market, or is to be so listed for trading or quoted immediately following such event, and if the Registered Holder properly exercises the Warrant within thirty (30) days following the public disclosure of the consummation of such applicable event by the Company pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission, the Warrant Price shall be reduced by an amount (in dollars) equal to the difference of (i) the Warrant Price in effect prior to such reduction minus (ii) (A) the Per Share Consideration (as defined below) (but in no event less than zero) minus (B) the Black-Scholes Warrant Value (as defined below). The “*Black-Scholes Warrant Value*” means the value of a Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of the applicable event based on the Black-Scholes Warrant Model for a Capped American Call on Bloomberg Financial Markets (“*Bloomberg*”). For purposes of calculating such amount, (1) Section 6 of this Agreement shall be taken into account, (2) the price of each share of Common Stock shall be the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event, (3) the assumed volatility shall be the 90 day volatility obtained from the HVT function on Bloomberg determined as of the trading day immediately prior to the day of the announcement of the applicable event, and (4) the assumed risk-free interest rate shall correspond to the U.S. Treasury rate for a period equal to the remaining term of the Warrant. “*Per Share Consideration*” means (i) if the consideration paid to holders of the Common Stock consists exclusively of cash, the amount of such cash per share of Common Stock, and (ii) in all other cases, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event. If any reclassification or reorganization also results in a change in shares of Common Stock covered by subsection 4.1.1, then such adjustment shall be made pursuant to subsection 4.1.1 or Sections 4.2, 4.3 and this Section 4.4. The provisions of this Section 4.4 shall similarly apply to successive reclassifications, reorganizations, mergers or consolidations, sales or other transfers. In no event will the Warrant Price be reduced to less than the par value per share issuable upon exercise of the Warrant.

4.5 Notices of Changes in Warrant. Upon every adjustment of the Warrant Price or the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of a Warrant, the Company shall give written notice thereof to the Warrant Agent, which notice shall state the Warrant Price resulting from such adjustment and the increase or decrease, if any, in the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable at such price upon the exercise of a Warrant, setting forth in reasonable detail the method of calculation and the facts upon which such calculation is based. Upon the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 or 4.4, the Company shall give written notice of the occurrence of such event to each holder of a Warrant, at the last address set forth for such holder in the Warrant Register, of the record date or the effective date of the event. Failure to give such notice, or any defect therein, shall not affect the legality or validity of such event.

4.6 No Fractional Shares. Notwithstanding any provision contained in this Agreement to the contrary, the Company shall not issue fractional shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of Warrants. If, by reason of any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 4, the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share, the Company shall, upon such exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

4.7 Form of Warrant. The form of Warrant need not be changed because of any adjustment pursuant to this Section 4, and Warrants issued after such adjustment may state the same Warrant Price and the same number of shares of Common Stock as is stated in the Warrants initially issued pursuant to this Agreement; provided, however, that the Company may at any time in its sole discretion make any change in the form of Warrant that the Company may deem appropriate and that does not affect the substance thereof, and any Warrant thereafter issued or countersigned, whether in exchange or substitution for an outstanding Warrant or otherwise, may be in the form as so changed.

4.8 Other Events. In case any event shall occur affecting the Company as to which none of the provisions of the preceding subsections of this Section 4 are strictly applicable, but which would require an adjustment to the terms of the Warrants in order to (i) avoid an adverse impact on the Warrants and (ii) effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4, then, in each such case, the Company shall appoint a firm of independent public accountants, investment banking or other appraisal firm of recognized national standing, which shall give its opinion as to whether or not any adjustment to the rights represented by the Warrants is necessary to effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4 and, if they determine that an adjustment is necessary, the terms of such adjustment; provided, however, that under no circumstances shall the Warrants be adjusted pursuant to this Section 4.8 as a result of any issuance of securities in connection with a Business Combination. The Company shall adjust the terms of the Warrants in a manner that is consistent with any adjustment recommended in such opinion.

5. Transfer and Exchange of Warrants.

5.1 Registration of Transfer. The Warrant Agent shall register the transfer, from time to time, of any outstanding Warrant upon the Warrant Register, upon surrender of such Warrant for transfer, in the case of certificated warrants, properly endorsed with signatures properly guaranteed and accompanied by appropriate instructions for transfer. Upon any such transfer, a new Warrant representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants shall be issued and the old Warrant shall be cancelled by the Warrant Agent. In the case of certificated warrants, the Warrants so cancelled shall be delivered by the Warrant Agent to the Company from time to time upon request.

5.2 Procedure for Surrender of Warrants. Warrants may be surrendered to the Warrant Agent, together with a written request for exchange or transfer, and thereupon the Warrant Agent shall issue in exchange therefor one or more new Warrants as requested by the Registered Holder of the Warrants so surrendered, representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants; provided, however, that in the event that a Warrant surrendered for transfer bears a restrictive legend (as in the case of the Private Placement Warrants), the Warrant Agent shall not cancel such Warrant and issue new Warrants in exchange thereof until the Warrant Agent has received an opinion of counsel for the Company stating that such transfer may be made and indicating whether the new Warrants must also bear a restrictive legend.

5.3 Fractional Warrants. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any registration of transfer or exchange which shall result in the issuance of a warrant certificate or book-entry position for a fraction of a warrant, except as part of the Units or Private Placement Units.

5.4 Service Charges. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrants.

5.5 Warrant Execution and Countersignature. The Warrant Agent is hereby authorized to countersign and to deliver, in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the Warrants required to be issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section 5, and the Company, whenever required by the Warrant Agent, shall supply the Warrant Agent with Warrants duly executed on behalf of the Company for such purpose.

5.6 Transfer of Warrants. Prior to the Detachment Date, the Public Warrants may be transferred or exchanged only together with the Unit in which such Warrant is included, and only for the purpose of effecting, or in conjunction with, a transfer or exchange of such Unit. Furthermore, each transfer of a Unit on the register relating to such Units shall operate also to transfer the Warrants included in such Unit.

6. Redemption.

6.1 Redemption of Warrants for Cash. Subject to Section 6.4 hereof, not less than all of the outstanding Warrants may be redeemed, at the option of the Company, at any time while they are exercisable and prior to their expiration, at the office of the Warrant Agent, upon notice to the Registered Holders of the Warrants, as described in Section 6.2 below, at the price of \$0.01 per Warrant (the "**Redemption Price**"), provided that the last sales price of the Common Stock reported has been at least \$18.00 per share (subject to adjustment in compliance with Section 4 hereof), on each of twenty (20) trading days within the thirty (30) trading-day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of the redemption is given and provided that there is an effective registration statement covering the issuance of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, and a current prospectus relating thereto, available throughout the 30-day Redemption Period (as defined in Section 6.2 below) or the Company has elected to require the exercise of the Warrants on a "cashless basis" pursuant to subsection 3.3.1.

6.2 Date Fixed for, and Notice of, Redemption. In the event that the Company elects to redeem all of the Warrants, pursuant to Section 6.1, the Company shall fix a date for the redemption (the "**Redemption Date**"). Notice of redemption shall be mailed by first class mail, postage prepaid, by the Company not less than thirty (30) days prior to the Redemption Date (the "**30-day Redemption Period**") to the Registered Holders of the Public Warrants to be redeemed at their last addresses as they shall appear on the registration books. Any notice mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given whether or not the Registered Holder received such notice.

6.3 Exercise After Notice of Redemption. The Warrants may be exercised, for cash (or on a "cashless basis" in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) of this Agreement) at any time after notice of redemption shall have been given by the Company pursuant to Section 6.2 hereof and prior to the Redemption Date. In the event that the Company determines to require all holders of Warrants to exercise their Warrants on a "cashless basis" pursuant to subsection 3.3.1, the notice of redemption shall contain the information necessary to calculate the number of shares of Common Stock to be received upon exercise of the Warrants, including the "Fair Market Value" (as such term is defined in subsection 3.3.1(b) hereof) in such case. On and after the Redemption Date, the record holder of the Warrants shall have no further rights except to receive, upon surrender of the Warrants, the Redemption Price.



6.4 Exclusion of Private Placement Warrants. The Company agrees that the redemption rights provided in this Section 6 shall not apply to the Private Placement Warrants if at the time of the redemption such Private Placement Warrants continue to be held by the Founders or their Permitted Transferees. However, once such Private Placement Warrants are transferred (other than to Permitted Transferees under Section 2.6), the Company may redeem the Private Placement Warrants pursuant to Section 6.1, provided that the criteria for redemption are met, including the opportunity of the holder of such Private Placement Warrants to exercise the Private Placement Warrants prior to redemption pursuant to Section 6.3. Private Placement Warrants that are transferred to persons other than Permitted Transferees shall upon such transfer cease to be Private Placement Warrants and shall become Public Warrants under this Agreement.

7. Other Provisions Relating to Rights of Holders of Warrants.

7.1 No Rights as Stockholder. A Warrant does not entitle the Registered Holder thereof to any of the rights of a stockholder of the Company, including, without limitation, the right to receive dividends, or other distributions, exercise any preemptive rights to vote or to consent or to receive notice as a stockholder in respect of the meetings of stockholders or the election of directors of the Company or any other matter.

7.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated, or Destroyed Warrants. If any Warrant is lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed, the Company and the Warrant Agent may on such terms as to indemnity or otherwise as they may in their discretion impose (which shall, in the case of a mutilated Warrant, include the surrender thereof), issue a new Warrant of like denomination, tenor, and date as the Warrant so lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed. Any such new Warrant shall constitute a substitute contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the allegedly lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed Warrant shall be at any time enforceable by anyone.

7.3 Reservation of Common Stock. The Company shall at all times reserve and keep available a number of its authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock that shall be sufficient to permit the exercise in full of all outstanding Warrants issued pursuant to this Agreement.

7.4 Registration of Common Stock; Cashless Exercise at Company's Option

7.4.1 Registration of the Common Stock. The Company agrees that as soon as practicable, but in no event later than fifteen (15) Business Days after the closing of its initial Business Combination, it shall use its best efforts to file with the Commission a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants. The Company shall use its best efforts to cause the same to become effective and to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration of the Warrants in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. If any such registration statement has not been declared effective by the 90th Business Day following the closing of the Business Combination, holders of the applicable Warrants shall have the right, during the period beginning on the 91st Business Day after the closing of the Business Combination and ending upon such registration statement being declared effective by the Commission, and during any other period when the Company shall fail to have maintained an effective registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the applicable Warrants, to exercise such Warrants on a "cashless basis," by exchanging the Warrants (in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule) or another exemption) for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined below) over the exercise price of the Warrants by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 7.4.1, "Fair Market Value" shall mean the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the date that notice of exercise is received by the Warrant Agent from the holder of such Warrants or its securities broker or intermediary. The date that notice of cashless exercise is received by the Warrant Agent shall be conclusively determined by the Warrant Agent. In connection with the "cashless exercise" of a Public Warrant, the Company shall, upon request, provide the Warrant Agent with an opinion of counsel for the Company (which shall be an outside law firm with securities law experience) stating that (i) the exercise of the Warrants on a cashless basis in accordance with this subsection 7.4.1 is not required to be registered under the Securities Act and (ii) the shares of Common Stock issued upon such exercise shall be freely tradable under United States federal securities laws by anyone who is not an affiliate (as such term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act (or any successor rule)) of the Company and, accordingly, shall not be required to bear a restrictive legend. Except as provided in subsection 7.4.2, for the avoidance of any doubt, unless and until all of the Warrants have been exercised or have expired, the Company shall continue to be obligated to comply with its registration obligations under the first three sentences of this subsection 7.4.1.

7.4.2 Cashless Exercise at Company's Option If the Common Stock is at the time of any exercise of a Warrant not listed on a national securities exchange such that it satisfies the definition of a "covered security" under Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule), the Company may, at its option, (i) require holders of Public Warrants who exercise Public Warrants to exercise such Public Warrants on a "cashless basis" in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule) as described in subsection 7.4.1 and (ii) in the event the Company so elects, the Company shall not be required to file or maintain in effect a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary. If the Company does not elect at the time of exercise to require a holder of Public Warrants who exercises Public Warrants to exercise such Public Warrants on a "cashless basis," it agrees to use its best efforts to register or qualify for sale the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Public Warrant under the blue sky laws of the state of residence in those states in which the Public Warrants were initially offered by the Company of the exercising Public Warrant holder to the extent an exemption is not available.

8. Concerning the Warrant Agent and Other Matters.

8.1 Payment of Taxes. The Company shall from time to time promptly pay all taxes and charges that may be imposed upon the Company or the Warrant Agent in respect of the issuance or delivery of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of the Warrants, but the Company shall not be obligated to pay any transfer taxes in respect of the Warrants or such shares of Common Stock.

8.2 Resignation, Consolidation, or Merger of Warrant Agent.

8.2.1 Appointment of Successor Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent, or any successor to it hereafter appointed, may resign its duties and be discharged from all further duties and liabilities hereunder after giving sixty (60) days' notice in writing to the Company. If the office of the Warrant Agent becomes vacant by resignation or incapacity to act or otherwise, the Company shall appoint in writing a successor Warrant Agent in place of the Warrant Agent. If the Company shall fail to make such appointment within a period of thirty (30) days after it has been notified in writing of such resignation or incapacity by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of a Warrant (who shall, with such notice, submit his, her or its Warrant for inspection by the Company), then the holder of any Warrant may apply to the Supreme Court of the State of New York for the County of New York for the appointment of a successor Warrant Agent at the Company's cost. Any successor Warrant Agent, whether appointed by the Company or by such court, shall be a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, in good standing and having its principal office in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, and authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. After appointment, any successor Warrant Agent shall be vested with all the authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations of its predecessor Warrant Agent with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, without any further act or deed; but if for any reason it becomes necessary or appropriate, the predecessor Warrant Agent shall execute and deliver, at the expense of the Company, an instrument transferring to such successor Warrant Agent all the authority, powers, and rights of such predecessor Warrant Agent hereunder; and upon request of any successor Warrant Agent the Company shall make, execute, acknowledge, and deliver any and all instruments in writing for more fully and effectually vesting in and confirming to such successor Warrant Agent all such authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations.

8.2.2 Notice of Successor Warrant Agent. In the event a successor Warrant Agent shall be appointed, the Company shall give notice thereof to the predecessor Warrant Agent and the Transfer Agent for the Common Stock not later than the effective date of any such appointment.

8.2.3 Merger or Consolidation of Warrant Agent. Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent may be merged or with which it may be consolidated or any corporation resulting from any merger or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without any further act.

8.3 Fees and Expenses of Warrant Agent.

8.3.1 Remuneration. The Company agrees to pay the Warrant Agent reasonable remuneration for its services as such Warrant Agent hereunder and shall, pursuant to its obligations under this Agreement, reimburse the Warrant Agent upon demand for all expenditures that the Warrant Agent may reasonably incur in the execution of its duties hereunder.

8.3.2 Further Assurances. The Company agrees to perform, execute, acknowledge, and deliver or cause to be performed, executed, acknowledged, and delivered all such further and other acts, instruments, and assurances as may reasonably be required by the Warrant Agent for the carrying out or performing of the provisions of this Agreement.

8.4 Liability of Warrant Agent.

8.4.1 Reliance on Company Statement. Whenever in the performance of its duties under this Agreement, the Warrant Agent shall deem it necessary or desirable that any fact or matter be proved or established by the Company prior to taking or suffering any action hereunder, such fact or matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by a statement signed by the Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Secretary or Chairman of the Board of the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent may rely upon such statement for any action taken or suffered in good faith by it pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement.

8.4.2 Indemnity. The Warrant Agent shall be liable hereunder only for its own gross negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith. The Company agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent and save it harmless against any and all liabilities, including judgments, costs and reasonable counsel fees, for anything done or omitted by the Warrant Agent in the execution of this Agreement, except as a result of the Warrant Agent's gross negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith.

8.4.3 Exclusions. The Warrant Agent shall have no responsibility with respect to the validity of this Agreement or with respect to the validity or execution of any Warrant (except its countersignature thereof). The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any breach by the Company of any covenant or condition contained in this Agreement or in any Warrant. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible to make any adjustments required under the provisions of Section 4 hereof or responsible for the manner, method, or amount of any such adjustment or the ascertaining of the existence of facts that would require any such adjustment; nor shall it by any act hereunder be deemed to make any representation or warranty as to the authorization or reservation of any shares of Common Stock to be issued pursuant to this Agreement or any Warrant or as to whether any shares of Common Stock shall, when issued, be valid and fully paid and non-assessable.

8.5 Acceptance of Agency. The Warrant Agent hereby accepts the agency established by this Agreement and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions herein set forth and among other things, shall account promptly to the Company with respect to Warrants exercised and concurrently account for, and pay to the Company, all monies received by the Warrant Agent for the purchase of shares of Common Stock through the exercise of the Warrants.

8.6 Waiver. The Warrant Agent has no right of set-off or any other right, title, interest or claim of any kind ("**Claim**") in, or to any distribution of, the Trust Account (as defined in that certain Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and between the Company and the Warrant Agent as trustee thereunder) and hereby agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction for any Claim against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. The Warrant Agent hereby waives any and all Claims against the Trust Account and any and all rights to seek access to the Trust Account.

9. Miscellaneous Provisions.

9.1 Successors. All the covenants and provisions of this Agreement by or for the benefit of the Company or the Warrant Agent shall bind and inure to the benefit of their respective successors and assigns.

9.2 Notices. Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of any Warrant to or on the Company shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Warrant Agent), as follows:

Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022  
Attention: Eric J. Zahler  
President and Chief Executive Officer

Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the holder of any Warrant or by the Company to or on the Warrant Agent shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Warrant Agent with the Company), as follows:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attention: Compliance Department

9.3 Applicable Law. The validity, interpretation, and performance of this Agreement and of the Warrants shall be governed in all respects by the laws of the State of New York. The Company hereby agrees that any action, proceeding or claim against it arising out of or relating in any way to this Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, and irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. The Company hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum.

9.4 Persons Having Rights under this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto and the Registered Holders of the Warrants any right, remedy, or claim under or by reason of this Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise, or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises, and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors and assigns and of the Registered Holders of the Warrants.

9.5 Examination of the Warrant Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the office of the Warrant Agent in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, for inspection by the Registered Holder of any Warrant. The Warrant Agent may require any such holder to submit such holder's Warrant for inspection by the Warrant Agent.

9.6 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

9.7 Effect of Headings. The section headings herein are for convenience only and are not part of this Agreement and shall not affect the interpretation thereof.

9.8 Amendments. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto without the consent of any Registered Holder for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein or adding or changing any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the parties may deem necessary or desirable and that the parties deem shall not adversely affect the interest of the Registered Holders. All other modifications or amendments, including any amendment to increase the Warrant Price or shorten the Exercise Period and any amendment to the terms of only the Private Placement Warrants, shall require the vote or written consent of the Registered Holders of 65% of the then-outstanding Public Warrants. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may lower the Warrant Price or extend the duration of the Exercise Period pursuant to Sections 3.1 and 3.2, respectively, without the consent of the Registered Holders.

9.9 Severability. This Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.

Exhibit A Form of Warrant Certificate

Exhibit B Legend

[Signature Page Follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first above written.

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler

Name: Eric J. Zahler

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, as Warrant Agent

By: /s/ Ana Gois

Name: Ana Gois

Title: Vice President

[Signature Page to Warrant Agreement]

---

EXHIBIT A

[Form of Warrant Certificate]

[FACE]

Number

**Warrants**

**THIS WARRANT SHALL BE VOID IF NOT EXERCISED PRIOR TO  
THE EXPIRATION OF THE EXERCISE PERIOD PROVIDED FOR  
IN THE WARRANT AGREEMENT DESCRIBED BELOW**

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

*Incorporated Under the Laws of the State of Delaware*

CUSIP [●]

**Warrant Certificate**

*This Warrant Certificate certifies that* \_\_\_\_\_, or registered assigns, is the registered holder of \_\_\_\_\_ redeemable warrant(s) evidenced hereby (the “*Warrants*” and each, a “*Warrant*”) to purchase shares of common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (“*Common Stock*”), of Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”). Each Warrant entitles the holder, upon exercise during the period set forth in the Warrant Agreement referred to below, to receive from the Company that number of fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock as set forth below, at the exercise price (the “*Exercise Price*”) as determined pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, payable in lawful money (or through “*cashless exercise*” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) of the United States of America upon surrender of this Warrant Certificate and payment of the Exercise Price at the office or agency of the Warrant Agent referred to below, subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Each Warrant is initially exercisable for one fully paid and non-assessable share of Common Stock. No fractional shares of Common Stock will be issued upon exercise of any Warrant. If, upon the exercise of Warrants, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company will, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to the Warrant holder. The number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

The initial Exercise Price per share of Common Stock for any Warrant is equal to \$11.50 per share. The Exercise Price is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

Subject to the conditions set forth in the Warrant Agreement, the Warrants may be exercised only during the Exercise Period and to the extent not exercised by the end of such Exercise Period, such Warrants shall become void. The Warrants may be redeemed, subject to certain conditions, as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof and such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid unless countersigned by the Warrant Agent, as such term is used in the Warrant Agreement.

This Warrant Certificate shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, as Warrant Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:



The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate are part of a duly authorized issue of Warrants entitling the holder on exercise to receive \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Common Stock and are issued or to be issued pursuant to a Warrant Agreement dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the "**Warrant Agreement**"), duly executed and delivered by the Company to Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (the "**Warrant Agent**"), which Warrant Agreement is hereby incorporated by reference in and made a part of this instrument and is hereby referred to for a description of the rights, limitation of rights, obligations, duties and immunities thereunder of the Warrant Agent, the Company and the holders (the words "**holders**" or "**holder**" meaning the Registered Holders or Registered Holder, respectively) of the Warrants. A copy of the Warrant Agreement may be obtained by the holder hereof upon written request to the Company. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Warrants may be exercised at any time during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement. The holder of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may exercise them by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the form of election to purchase set forth hereon properly completed and executed, together with payment of the Exercise Price as specified in the Warrant Agreement (or through "cashless exercise" as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent. In the event that upon any exercise of Warrants evidenced hereby the number of Warrants exercised shall be less than the total number of Warrants evidenced hereby, there shall be issued to the holder hereof or his, her or its assignee, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the number of Warrants not exercised.

Notwithstanding anything else in this Warrant Certificate or the Warrant Agreement, no Warrant may be exercised unless at the time of exercise (i) a registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock to be issued upon exercise is effective under the Securities Act and (ii) a prospectus thereunder relating to the shares of Common Stock is current, except through "cashless exercise" as provided for in the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrant Agreement provides that upon the occurrence of certain events the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants set forth on the face hereof may, subject to certain conditions, be adjusted. If, upon exercise of a Warrant, the holder thereof would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company shall, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to the holder of the Warrant.

Warrant Certificates, when surrendered at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the Registered Holder thereof in person or by legal representative or attorney duly authorized in writing, may be exchanged, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, but without payment of any service charge, for another Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants.

Upon due presentation for registration of transfer of this Warrant Certificate at the office of the Warrant Agent a new Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor and evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants shall be issued to the transferee(s) in exchange for this Warrant Certificate, subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, without charge except for any tax or other governmental charge imposed in connection therewith.

The Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the Registered Holder(s) hereof as the absolute owner(s) of this Warrant Certificate (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing hereon made by anyone), for the purpose of any exercise hereof, of any distribution to the holder(s) hereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. Neither the Warrants nor this Warrant Certificate entitles any holder hereof to any rights of a stockholder of the Company.

Election to Purchase

(To Be Executed Upon Exercise of Warrant)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to receive \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Common Stock and herewith tenders payment for such shares of Common Stock to the order of Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "*Company*") in the amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that a certificate for such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such shares of Common Stock be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_ whose address is \_\_\_\_\_. If said number of shares of Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Common Stock purchasable hereunder, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

In the event that the Warrant has been called for redemption by the Company pursuant to Section 6.1 or Section 6.2 of the Warrant Agreement and the Company has required cashless exercise pursuant to Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is a Private Placement Warrant that is to be exercised on a "cashless" basis pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is to be exercised on a "cashless" basis pursuant to Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant may be exercised, to the extent allowed by the Warrant Agreement, through cashless exercise (i) the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for would be determined in accordance with the relevant section of the Warrant Agreement which allows for such cashless exercise and (ii) the holder hereof shall complete the following: The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, through the cashless exercise provisions of the Warrant Agreement, to receive shares of Common Stock. If said number of shares is less than all of the shares of Common Stock purchasable hereunder (after giving effect to the cashless exercise), the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

[Signature Page Follows]

Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 20

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Tax Identification Number)

Signature Guaranteed:

\_\_\_\_\_  
THE SIGNATURE(S) MUST BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15 (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE) UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED).

**EXHIBIT B**

**LEGEND**

“THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR ANY STATE SECURITIES LAWS, AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR OTHERWISE DISPOSED OF UNLESS REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, AND ANY APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS OR AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION IS AVAILABLE. IN ADDITION, SUBJECT TO ANY ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS ON TRANSFER DESCRIBED IN THE LETTER AGREEMENT BY AND AMONG MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION (THE “COMPANY”), MONOCLE PARTNERS, LLC AND THE OTHER PARTIES THERETO, THE SECURITIES HEREBY MAY NOT BE SOLD OR TRANSFERRED PRIOR TO THE DATE THAT IS ONE YEAR AFTER THE DATE UPON WHICH THE COMPANY COMPLETES ITS INITIAL BUSINESS COMBINATION (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 3 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT REFERRED TO HEREIN) EXCEPT TO A PERMITTED TRANSFEREE (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT) WHO AGREES IN WRITING WITH THE COMPANY TO BE SUBJECT TO SUCH TRANSFER PROVISIONS.

SECURITIES EVIDENCED HEREBY AND SHARES OF COMMON STOCK OF THE COMPANY ISSUED UPON EXERCISE OF SUCH SECURITIES SHALL BE ENTITLED TO REGISTRATION RIGHTS UNDER A REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT TO BE EXECUTED BY THE COMPANY.”

No. [●] Warrants

February 6, 2019

Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022

Re: Initial Public Offering

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This letter (this "**Letter Agreement**") is being delivered to you in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement (the "**Underwriting Agreement**") to be entered into by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), and Cowen and Company, LLC, as representative (the "**Representative**") of the several underwriters (each, an "**Underwriter**" and collectively, the "**Underwriters**"), relating to an underwritten initial public offering (the "**Public Offering**"), of 17,250,000 of the Company's units (including up to 2,250,000 units that may be purchased to cover over-allotments, if any) (each, a "**Unit**"), each Unit comprised of one share of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Common Stock**"), and one redeemable warrant (each, a "**Warrant**"). Each Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment. The Units shall be sold in the Public Offering pursuant to a registration statement on Form S-1 and prospectus (the "**Prospectus**") filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**") and the Company shall apply to have the Units listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market. Certain capitalized terms used herein are defined in paragraph 11 hereof.

In order to induce the Company and the Underwriters to enter into the Underwriting Agreement and to proceed with the Public Offering and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, Monocle Partners, LLC (the "**Sponsor**"), Cowen Investments II LLC ("**Cowen**") and each of the undersigned individuals, each of whom is a member of the Company's board of directors and/or management team (each such other undersigned individual, an "**Insider**" and collectively, the "**Insiders**"), hereby agrees with the Company as follows:

1. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider agrees that (a) if the Company seeks stockholder approval of a proposed Business Combination, then in connection with such proposed Business Combination, it, he or she shall (i) vote any shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her in favor of any proposed Business Combination and (ii) not redeem any shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her in connection with such stockholder approval; and (b) if the Company engages in a tender offer in connection with a proposed Business Combination, it, he or she shall not sell any shares of Common Stock to the Company in connection therewith.

2. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider hereby agrees that in the event that the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within 21 months from the date of the closing of the Public Offering or, in the event that the Company extends the period of time to consummate a Business Combination by an additional three months in accordance with the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation (the "**Certificate of Incorporation**"), within 24 months from the date of the closing of the Public Offering (the latest such date being referred to as the "**Termination Date**"), or such longer period approved by the Company's stockholders in accordance with the Certificate of Incorporation, the Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider shall take all reasonable steps to cause the Company to (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than 10 business days thereafter, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem 100% of the Common Stock sold as part of the Units in the Public Offering (the "**Offering Shares**"), at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Company to pay its taxes (which interest shall be net of taxes payable and less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish all Public Stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and other requirements of applicable law. The Sponsor, Cowen, and each Insider agree not to propose any amendment to the Certificate of Incorporation that would affect the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Company does not complete a Business Combination by the Termination Date, unless the Company provides its Public Stockholders with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon approval of any such amendment at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable) earned on the funds in the Trust Account divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares.

---

The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider acknowledges that it, he or she has no right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account or any other asset of the Company as a result of any liquidation of the Company with respect to the Founder Shares held by it, him or her, *provided*, that the foregoing waiver shall not apply with respect to liquidating distributions from the Trust Account made in connection with any Offering Shares purchased by the undersigned or its Affiliates during the Public Offering or on the open market after the completion of the Public Offering if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination by the Termination Date. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider hereby further waives, with respect to any shares of Common Stock held by it, him or her, if any, any redemption rights it, he or she may have in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination, including, without limitation, any such rights available in the context of a stockholder vote to approve such Business Combination or in the context of a tender offer made by the Company to purchase shares of Common Stock (although the Sponsor, Cowen, the Insiders and their respective affiliates shall be entitled to redemption and liquidation rights with respect to any Offering Shares it or they hold if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination by the Termination Date).

3. Without limiting Cowen's obligations under paragraph 7 hereof, during the period commencing on the effective date of the Underwriting Agreement and ending 180 days after such date, Cowen shall not sell, transfer, assign, pledge or hypothecate any of its Founder Shares or Private Units (or any securities underlying the Private Units, including the shares of Common Stock and Warrants included in the Private Units and the shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants included in the Private Units), or subject any of such securities to any hedging, short sale, derivative, put, or call transaction that would result in the effective economic disposition of such securities, except as provided in FINRA Rule 5110(g)(2). Notwithstanding the provisions set forth in paragraphs 7(a) and (b) below, during the period commencing on the effective date of the Underwriting Agreement and ending 180 days after such date, the Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider shall not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, (i) offer, sell, contract to sell, hypothecate, pledge or grant any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of (or enter into any transaction that is designed to, or might reasonably be expected to, result in the disposition (whether by actual disposition or effective economic disposition due to cash settlement or otherwise)), directly or indirectly, or establish or increase a put equivalent position or liquidate or decrease a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "*Exchange Act*"), and the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder, with respect to, any Units, shares of Common Stock, Warrants or any securities convertible into, or exercisable, or exchangeable for, Common Stock, (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any Units, shares of Common Stock, Warrants or any securities convertible into, or exercisable, or exchangeable for, shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such securities, in cash or otherwise, or (iii) publicly announce an intention to effect any such transaction. Each of the Sponsor and the Insiders acknowledges and agrees that, prior to the effective date of any release or waiver, of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 3 or paragraph 7 below, the Company shall announce the impending release or waiver by press release through a major news service at least two business days before the effective date of the release or waiver. Any release or waiver granted shall only be effective two business days after the publication date of such press release. The provisions of this paragraph will not apply if (i) the release or waiver is effected solely to permit a transfer of securities that is not for consideration and (ii) the transferee has agreed in writing to be bound by the same terms described in this Letter Agreement to the extent and for the duration that such terms remain in effect at the time of the transfer.

4. In the event of the liquidation of the Trust Account, the Sponsor (which for purposes of clarification shall not extend to any other shareholders, members or managers of the Sponsor) agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever (including, but not limited to, any and all legal or other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, whether pending or threatened, or any claim whatsoever) to which the Company may become subject as a result of any claim by (i) any third party (other than the Company's independent accountants) for services rendered or products sold to the Company or (ii) a prospective target business with which the Company has discussed entering into a transaction agreement (a "**Target**"); provided, however, that such indemnification of the Company by the Sponsor shall apply only to the extent necessary to ensure that such claims by a third party for services rendered (other than the Company's independent public accountants) or products sold to the Company or a Target do not reduce the amount of funds in the Trust Account to below (i) \$10.10 per share of the Offering Shares or (ii) such lesser amount per share of the Offering Shares held in the Trust Account due to reductions in the value of the trust assets as of the date of the liquidation of the Trust Account, in each case, net of the amount of interest earned on the property in the Trust Account which may be withdrawn to pay taxes (less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), except as to any claims by a third party (including a Target) who executed a waiver of any and all rights to seek access to the Trust Account and except as to any claims under the Company's indemnity of the Underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. In the event that any such executed waiver is deemed to be unenforceable against such third party, the Sponsor shall not be responsible to the extent of any liability for such third party claims. The Sponsor shall have the right to defend against any such claim with counsel of its choice reasonably satisfactory to the Company if, within 15 days following written receipt of notice of the claim to the Sponsor, the Sponsor notifies the Company in writing that it shall undertake such defense.

5. (a) To the extent that the Underwriters do not exercise their option to purchase up to an additional 2,250,000 Units to cover over-allotments within 45 days from the date of the Prospectus (and as further described in the Prospectus), the Sponsor and Cowen agree to forfeit, at no cost, a number of Founder Shares in the aggregate equal to the product of 527,344, in the case of the Sponsor, or 35,156 in the case of Cowen, multiplied by a fraction, (i) the numerator of which is 2,250,000 minus the number of Units purchased by the Underwriters upon the exercise of their option to purchase additional Units, and (ii) the denominator of which is 2,250,000. The forfeiture will be adjusted to the extent that the over-allotment option is not exercised in full by the Underwriters so that the Initial Stockholders will own an aggregate of 20.0% of the Company's issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock after the Public Offering (excluding shares of Common Stock included in the Private Units and assuming no Initial Stockholder purchases units in the Public Offering).

(b) If, in connection with the closing of a Business Combination, the Sponsor agrees to forfeit any Founder Shares or Private Units to the Company at no cost or subject its Founder Shares or Private Units to contractual terms or restrictions, convert its Founder Shares into other securities or contractual rights or otherwise modify the terms of its Founder Shares or Private Units (each a "**Sponsor Modification**"), then Cowen agrees to forfeit, subject, convert or modify its Founder Shares or Private Units on a pro rata basis and on the same terms as the Sponsor, and hereby grants to the Company and any representative designated by the Company without further action by Cowen a limited irrevocable power of attorney to effect such forfeiture or Sponsor Modification on behalf of Cowen, which power of attorney shall be deemed to be coupled with an interest.

6. (a) Each Insider agrees not to participate in the formation of, or become an officer or director of, any other special purpose acquisition company with a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act until the Company has (i) entered into a definitive agreement regarding its initial Business Combination or (ii) failed to complete a Business Combination by the Termination Date.

(b) The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider hereby agrees and acknowledges that: (i) the Underwriters and the Company would be irreparably injured in the event of a breach by such Sponsor or an Insider of its, his or her obligations under paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6(a), 7(a), 7(b), and 9 of this Letter Agreement (ii) monetary damages may not be an adequate remedy for such breach and (iii) the non-breaching party shall be entitled to injunctive relief, in addition to any other remedy that such party may have in law or in equity, in the event of such breach.

7. (a) The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider agrees that it, he or she shall not Transfer any Founder Shares or Private Units (or any securities underlying the Private Units, including the shares of Common Stock and Warrants included in the Private Units and the shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants included in the Private Units) (collectively, the "**Securities**") until the earlier of (A) one year after the completion of the Company's initial Business Combination and (B) subsequent to the Business Combination, (x) if the last reported sale price of the Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company's initial Business Combination or (y) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction that results in all of the Company's stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property (the "**Founder Shares Lock-up Period**").

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions set forth in paragraph 7(a), Transfers of the Securities that are held by the Sponsor, Cowen, any Insider or any of their permitted transferees (that have complied with this paragraph 7(b)), are permitted (i) to any persons (including their affiliates and members) participating in the private placement of the Private Units; (ii) to the Founders or any of the Company's officers, directors and employees; (iii) in the case of an entity, as a distribution to its partners, stockholders or members upon liquidation; (iv) in the case of an individual, by bona fide gift to a member of the individual's immediate family, to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of the individual's immediate family, or for estate planning purposes; (v) in the case of an individual, by virtue of laws of descent and distribution upon death of the individual; (vi) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order; (vii) by pledges to secure obligations incurred in connection with purchases of the Company's securities; (viii) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the applicable securities were originally purchased; (ix) to the Company for no value for cancellation in connection with the consummation of the initial Business Combination; or (x) in the event of the Company's liquidation prior to the completion of the Company's initial Business Combination; provided, however, that in the case of clauses (i) through (viii), these permitted transferees must enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the restrictions herein.

8. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider represents and warrants that it, he or she has never been suspended or expelled from membership in any securities or commodities exchange or association or had a securities or commodities license or registration denied, suspended or revoked. Each Insider's biographical information furnished to the Company (including any such information included in the Prospectus) is true and accurate in all respects and does not omit any material information with respect to the Insider's background. The Sponsor and each Insider's questionnaire furnished to the Company is true and accurate in all respects. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider represents and warrants that: it, he or she is not subject to or a respondent in any legal action for, any injunction, cease-and-desist order or order or stipulation to desist or refrain from any act or practice relating to the offering of securities in any jurisdiction; it, he or she has never been convicted of, or pleaded guilty to, any crime (i) involving fraud, (ii) relating to any financial transaction or handling of funds of another person, or (iii) pertaining to any dealings in any securities and it, he or she is not currently a defendant in any such criminal proceeding.

9. Except as disclosed in the Prospectus, neither the Sponsor nor any Insider nor any affiliate of the Sponsor or any Insider, nor any director or officer of the Company, shall receive from the Company any finder's fee, reimbursement, consulting fee, monies in respect of any repayment of a loan or other compensation prior to, or in connection with any services rendered in order to effectuate the consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is), other than the amounts described in the Prospectus under the heading "Summary – The Offering – Limited Payments to Insiders".

10. The Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider has full right and power, without violating any agreement to which it is bound (including, without limitation, any non-competition or non-solicitation agreement with any employer or former employer), to enter into this Letter Agreement and, as applicable, to serve as an officer and/or a director on the board of directors of the Company and hereby consents to being named in the Prospectus as an officer and/or a director of the Company.



11. As used herein, (i) “**Business Combination**” shall mean a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization, recapitalization or other similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses; (ii) “**Founder Shares**” shall mean the 4,312,500 shares (or 3,750,000 shares if the Underwriters’ option to purchase additional units is not exercised) of Common Stock initially held by the Initial Stockholders (giving effect to the forfeiture by the Initial Stockholders of an aggregate of 1,437,500 shares on November 19, 2018); (iii) “**Initial Stockholders**” shall mean the Sponsor, Cowen and any other holder of Founder Shares immediately prior to the Public Offering; (iv) “**Private Units**” shall mean the units that the Sponsor and Cowen have agreed to purchase for an aggregate purchase price of \$6,500,000 (or \$7,175,000 if the Underwriters’ option to purchase additional units is exercised in full), or \$10.00 per unit, in a private placement that shall occur simultaneously with the consummation of the Public Offering; (v) “**Public Stockholders**” shall mean the holders of securities issued in the Public Offering; (vi) “**Trust Account**” shall mean the trust fund into which a portion of the net proceeds of the Public Offering shall be deposited; and (vii) “**Transfer**” shall mean the (a) sale or assignment of, offer to sell, contract or agreement to sell, hypothecate, pledge, grant of any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of or agreement to dispose of, directly or indirectly, or establishment or increase of a put equivalent position or liquidation with respect to or decrease of a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder with respect to, any security, (b) entry into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any security, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such securities, in cash or otherwise, or (c) public announcement of any intention to effect any transaction specified in clause (a) or (b).

12. This Letter Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby. This Letter Agreement may not be changed, amended, modified or waived (other than to correct a typographical error) as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by the Company, the Sponsor, Cowen and any Insider that is subject of any such change, amendment, modification or waiver.

13. No party hereto may assign either this Letter Agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of the other parties. Any purported assignment in violation of this paragraph shall be void and ineffectual and shall not operate to transfer or assign any interest or title to the purported assignee. This Letter Agreement shall be binding on the Sponsor, Cowen and each Insider and their respective successors, heirs and assigns and permitted transferees.

14. Nothing in this Letter Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Letter Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises and agreements contained in this Letter Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors, heirs, personal representatives and assigns and permitted transferees; provided, however, that the Underwriters shall benefit from the provisions set forth in paragraphs 3 and 7, which such paragraph shall not be amended or modified without the written consent of the Representative.

15. This Letter Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

16. This Letter Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Letter Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Letter Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.

17. This Letter Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. The parties hereto (i) all agree that any action, proceeding, claim or dispute arising out of, or relating in any way to, this Letter Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of New York City, in the State of New York, and irrevocably submit to such jurisdiction and venue, which jurisdiction and venue shall be exclusive and (ii) waive any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and venue or that such courts represent an inconvenient forum.

18. Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Letter Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or facsimile transmission.

19. This Letter Agreement shall terminate on the earlier of (i) the expiration of the Lock-up Periods or (ii) the liquidation of the Company; provided, however, that this Letter Agreement shall earlier terminate in the event that the Public Offering is not consummated and closed by March 31, 2019; provided further that paragraph 4 of this Letter Agreement shall survive such liquidation.

[Signature Page Follows]

Sincerely,

**MONOCLE PARTNERS, LLC**

By: /s/ Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Name: Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Title: Manager

**COWEN INVESTMENTS II LLC**

By: /s/ Owen Littman  
Name: Owen Littman  
Title: Authorized Signatory

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler

By: /s/ Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Name: Sai S. Devabhaktuni

By: /s/ Richard J. Townsend  
Name: Richard J. Townsend

By: /s/ C. Robert Kehler  
Name: C. Robert Kehler

By: /s/ Donald W. Manvel  
Name: Donald W. Manvel

By: /s/ John C. Pescatore  
Name: John C. Pescatore

[Signature Page to Letter Agreement]

---

## INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT TRUST AGREEMENT

This Investment Management Trust Agreement (this “*Agreement*”) is made effective as of February 6, 2019 by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation (the “*Trustee*”).

WHEREAS, the Company’s registration statement on Form S-1, No. 333-228470 (the “*Registration Statement*”) and prospectus (the “*Prospectus*”) for the initial public offering of the Company’s units (the “*Units*”), each of which consists of one share of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “*Common Stock*”), and one redeemable warrant, each warrant entitling the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock (such initial public offering hereinafter referred to as the “*Offering*”), has been declared effective as of the date hereof by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission; and

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into an Underwriting Agreement (the “*Underwriting Agreement*”) with Cowen and Company, LLC as representative (the “*Representative*”) of the several underwriters (the “*Underwriters*”) named therein; and

WHEREAS, if a Business Combination (as defined below) is not consummated within the initial 21 month period following the closing of the Offering, Monocle Partners, LLC (the “*Sponsor*”) may extend such period by an additional three (3) months (the “*Extension*”), for a total of 24 months to complete a Business Combination, by depositing \$1,500,000 (or up to \$1,725,000 if the Underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full) into the Trust Account (as defined below) no later than the 21-month anniversary of the closing of the Offering (the “*Business Combination Deadline*”); and

WHEREAS, as described in the Prospectus, \$151,500,000 of the gross proceeds of the Offering and sale of the Private Placement Units (as defined in the Underwriting Agreement) (or \$174,225,000 if the Underwriters’ option to purchase additional units is exercised in full) will be delivered to the Trustee to be deposited and held in a segregated trust account located at all times in the United States (the “*Trust Account*”) for the benefit of the Company and the holders of shares of the Common Stock included in the Units issued in the Offering as hereinafter provided (the amount to be delivered to the Trustee (and any interest subsequently earned thereon) including any amount deposited in connection with the Extension, is referred to herein as the “*Property*,” the stockholders for whose benefit the Trustee shall hold the Property will be referred to as the “*Public Stockholders*,” and the Public Stockholders and the Company will be referred to together as the “*Beneficiaries*”); and

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into that certain business combination marketing agreement, dated as of February 6, 2019, with the Representative and the other Underwriters, pursuant to which the Company will pay the Underwriters a cash fee (the “*M&A Fee*”) for certain advisory services upon the consummation of the initial business combination in an amount equal to, in the aggregate, 3.5% of the gross proceeds of the Offering, including any proceeds from the full or partial exercise of the over-allotment option; and

WHEREAS, the Company and the Trustee desire to enter into this Agreement to set forth the terms and conditions pursuant to which the Trustee shall hold the Property.

NOW THEREFORE, IT IS AGREED:

1. Agreements and Covenants of Trustee. The Trustee hereby agrees and covenants to:

- (a) Hold the Property in trust for the Beneficiaries in accordance with the terms of this Agreement in the Trust Account established by the Trustee in the United States at JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. and at a brokerage institution selected by the Trustee that is reasonably satisfactory to the Company;
  - (b) Manage, supervise and administer the Trust Account subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein;
-

(c) In a timely manner, upon the written instruction of the Company, invest and reinvest the Property in United States government securities within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, having a maturity of 180 days or less, or in money market funds meeting the conditions of paragraphs (d)(1), (d)(2), (d)(3) and (d)(4) of Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (or any successor rule), which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations, as determined by the Company; the Trustee may not invest in any other securities or assets, it being understood that the Trust Account will earn no interest while account funds are uninvested awaiting the Company's instructions hereunder and the Trustee may earn bank credits or other consideration during such periods;

(d) Collect and receive, when due, all interest or other income arising from the Property, which shall become part of the "Property," as such term is used herein;

(e) Promptly notify the Company and the Representative of all communications received by the Trustee with respect to any Property requiring action by the Company;

(f) Supply any necessary information or documents as may be requested by the Company (or its authorized agents) in connection with the Company's preparation of the tax returns relating to assets held in the Trust Account;

(g) Participate in any plan or proceeding for protecting or enforcing any right or interest arising from the Property if, as and when instructed by the Company to do so;

(h) Render to the Company monthly written statements of the activities of, and amounts in, the Trust Account reflecting all receipts and disbursements of the Trust Account;

(i) Commence liquidation of the Trust Account only after and promptly after (x) receipt of, and only in accordance with, the terms of a letter from the Company ("**Termination Letter**") in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as either Exhibit A or Exhibit B, as applicable, signed on behalf of the Company by its Chief Executive Officer, President, Chief Financial Officer, Executive Vice President, Secretary or Chairman of the board of directors of the Company (the "**Board**") or other authorized officer of the Company, and complete the liquidation of the Trust Account and distribute the Property in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of any taxes payable, and less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), only as directed in the Termination Letter and the other documents referred to therein, or (y) upon the date which is the later of (i) 21 months after the closing of the Offering or, in the event that the Company extended the period of time to complete a Business Combination by implementing the Extension, 24 months after the closing of the Offering, and (ii) such later date as may be approved by the Company's stockholders in accordance with the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation if a Termination Letter has not been received by the Trustee prior to such date, in which case the Trust Account shall be liquidated in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Termination Letter attached as Exhibit B and the Property in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of any taxes payable, and less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), shall be distributed to the Public Stockholders of record as of such date; provided, however, that in the event the Trustee receives a Termination Letter in a form substantially similar to Exhibit B hereto, or if the Trustee begins to liquidate the Property because it has received no such Termination Letter by the date specified in clause (y) of this Section 1(i), the Trustee shall keep the Trust Account open until twelve (12) months following the date the Property has been distributed to the Public Stockholders;

(j) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit C, withdraw from the Trust Account and distribute to the Company the amount of interest earned on the Property requested by the Company to cover any tax obligation, including any franchise tax obligations, owed by the Company as a result of assets of the Company or interest or other income earned on the Property, which amount shall be delivered directly to the Company by electronic funds transfer or other method of prompt payment, and the Company shall forward such payment to the relevant taxing authority, as applicable; provided, however, that to the extent there is not sufficient cash in the Trust Account to pay such tax obligation, the Trustee shall liquidate such assets held in the Trust Account as shall be designated by the Company in writing to make such distribution so long as there is no reduction in the principal amount initially deposited in the Trust Account; provided, further, that if the tax to be paid is a franchise tax, the written request by the Company to make such distribution shall be accompanied by a copy of the franchise tax bill from the State of Delaware for the Company and a written statement from the principal financial officer of the Company setting forth the actual amount payable (it being acknowledged and agreed that any such amount in excess of interest income earned on the Property shall not be payable from the Trust Account). The written request of the Company referenced above shall constitute presumptive evidence that the Company is entitled to said funds, and the Trustee shall have no responsibility to look beyond said request;

(k) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit D, the Trustee shall distribute to the Public Stockholders of record as of such date the amount requested by the Company to be used to redeem shares of Common Stock from Public Stockholders properly submitted pursuant to the provisions of Section 9.7 of the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation; and

(l) Upon receipt of an extension letter ("**Extension Letter**") in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit E at least five (5) days prior to the Business Combination Deadline, signed on behalf of the Company by its Chief Executive Officer, President, Chief Financial Officer, Executive Vice President, Secretary or Chairman of the Board, and receipt of the dollar amount specified in the Extension Letter on or prior to the Business Combination Deadline, to follow the instructions set forth in the Extension Letter; and

(m) Not make any withdrawals or distributions from the Trust Account other than pursuant to Section 1(i), (j) or (k) above.

2. Agreements and Covenants of the Company. The Company hereby agrees and covenants to:

(a) Give all instructions to the Trustee hereunder in writing, signed by the Company's Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Executive Vice President or Secretary. In addition, except with respect to its duties under Sections 1(i), 1(j) and 1(k) hereof, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on, and shall be protected in relying on, any verbal or telephonic advice or instruction which it, in good faith and with reasonable care, believes to be given by any one of the persons authorized above to give written instructions, provided that the Company shall promptly confirm such instructions in writing;

(b) Subject to Section 4 hereof, hold the Trustee harmless and indemnify the Trustee from and against any and all expenses, including reasonable counsel fees and disbursements, or losses suffered by the Trustee in connection with any action taken by it hereunder and in connection with any action, suit or other proceeding brought against the Trustee involving any claim, or in connection with any claim or demand, which in any way arises out of or relates to this Agreement, the services of the Trustee hereunder, or the Property or any interest earned on the Property, except for expenses and losses resulting from the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. Promptly after the receipt by the Trustee of notice of demand or claim or the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding, pursuant to which the Trustee intends to seek indemnification under this Section 2(b), it shall notify the Company in writing of such claim (hereinafter referred to as the "**Indemnified Claim**"). The Trustee shall have the right to conduct and manage the defense against such Indemnified Claim; provided that the Trustee shall obtain the consent of the Company with respect to the selection of counsel, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. The Trustee may not agree to settle any Indemnified Claim without the prior written consent of the Company, which such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. The Company may participate in such action with its own counsel;

(c) Pay the Trustee the fees set forth on Schedule A hereto, including an initial acceptance fee, annual administration fee, and transaction processing fee which fees shall be subject to modification by the parties from time to time. It is expressly understood that the Property shall not be used to pay such fees unless and until it is distributed to the Company pursuant to Sections 1(i) through 1(k) hereof. The Company shall pay the Trustee the initial acceptance fee and the first annual administration fee at the consummation of the Offering. The Trustee shall refund to the Company the monthly fee (on a pro rata basis) with respect to any period after the liquidation of the Trust Account. The Company shall not be responsible for any other fees or charges of the Trustee except as set forth in this Section 2(c), Schedule A and as may be provided in Section 2(b) hereof;

(d) In connection with any vote of the Company's stockholders regarding a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination involving the Company and one or more businesses (a "**Business Combination**"), provide to the Trustee an affidavit or certificate of the inspector of elections for the stockholder meeting verifying the vote of such stockholders regarding such Business Combination;

(e) Provide the Representative with a copy of any Termination Letter(s) and/or any other correspondence that is sent to the Trustee with respect to any proposed withdrawal from the Trust Account promptly after it issues the same;

(f) Instruct the Trustee to make only those distributions that are permitted under this Agreement, and refrain from instructing the Trustee to make any distributions that are not permitted under this Agreement;

(g) Expressly provide in any Instruction Letter (as defined in Exhibit A) delivered in connection with a Termination Letter in the form of Exhibit A that the M&A Fee be paid directly to the account or accounts directed by the Representative; and

(h) Within four (4) business days after the Underwriters' exercise of the over-allotment option (or any unexercised portion thereof) or such over-allotment option expires, provide the Trustee with a notice in writing of the total amount of the M&A Fee, which shall in no event be less than \$5,250,000 (or \$6,037,500 if the Underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full); and

(i) If applicable, issue a press release at least three (3) days prior to the Business Combination Deadline announcing that, at least five (5) days prior to the Business Combination Deadline, the Company received notice from the Sponsor that the Sponsor intends to extend the Business Combination Deadline; and

(j) Promptly following the Business Combination Deadline, disclose whether or not the term the Company has to consummate a Business Combination has been extended.

3. Limitations of Liability. The Trustee shall have no responsibility or liability to:

(a) Imply obligations, perform duties, inquire or otherwise be subject to the provisions of any agreement or document other than this Agreement and that which is expressly set forth herein;

(b) Take any action with respect to the Property, other than as directed in Section 1 hereof, and the Trustee shall have no liability to any third party except for liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct;

(c) Institute any proceeding for the collection of any principal and income arising from, or institute, appear in or defend any proceeding of any kind with respect to, any of the Property unless and until it shall have received instructions from the Company given as provided herein to do so and the Company shall have advanced or guaranteed to it funds sufficient to pay any expenses incident thereto;

(d) Refund any depreciation in principal of any Property;

(e) Assume that the authority of any person designated by the Company to give instructions hereunder shall not be continuing unless provided otherwise in such designation, or unless the Company shall have delivered a written revocation of such authority to the Trustee;

(f) The other parties hereto or to anyone else for any action taken or omitted by it, or any action suffered by it to be taken or omitted, in good faith and in the Trustee's reasonable best judgment, except for the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. The Trustee may rely conclusively and shall be protected in acting upon any order, notice, demand, certificate, opinion or advice of counsel (including counsel chosen by the Trustee, which counsel may be the Company's counsel), statement, instrument, report or other paper or document (not only as to its due execution and the validity and effectiveness of its provisions, but also as to the truth and acceptability of any information therein contained) which the Trustee believes, in good faith and with reasonable care, to be genuine and to be signed or presented by the proper person or persons. The Trustee shall not be bound by any notice or demand, or any waiver, modification, termination or rescission of this Agreement or any of the terms hereof, unless evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Trustee, signed by the proper party or parties and, if the duties or rights of the Trustee are affected, unless it shall give its prior written consent thereto;

(g) Verify the accuracy of the information contained in the Registration Statement;

(h) Provide any assurance that any Business Combination entered into by the Company or any other action taken by the Company is as contemplated by the Registration Statement;

(i) File information returns with respect to the Trust Account with any local, state or federal taxing authority or provide periodic written statements to the Company documenting the taxes payable by the Company, if any, relating to any interest income earned on the Property;

(j) Prepare, execute and file tax reports, income or other tax returns and pay any taxes with respect to any income generated by, and activities relating to, the Trust Account, regardless of whether such tax is payable by the Trust Account or the Company, including, but not limited to, franchise and income tax obligations, except pursuant to Section 1(j) hereof; or

(k) Verify calculations, qualify or otherwise approve the Company's written requests for distributions pursuant to Sections 1(i), 1(j) and 1(k) hereof.

4. Trust Account Waiver. The Trustee has no right of set-off or any right, title, interest or claim of any kind ("**Claim**") to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account, and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account that it may have now or in the future. In the event the Trustee has any Claim against the Company under this Agreement, including, without limitation, under Section 2(b) or Section 2(c) hereof, the Trustee shall pursue such Claim solely against the Company and its assets outside the Trust Account and not against the Property or any monies in the Trust Account.

5. Termination. This Agreement shall terminate as follows:

(a) If the Trustee gives written notice to the Company that it desires to resign under this Agreement, the Company shall use its reasonable efforts to locate a successor trustee, pending which the Trustee shall continue to act in accordance with this Agreement. At such time that the Company notifies the Trustee that a successor trustee has been appointed and has agreed to become subject to the terms of this Agreement, the Trustee shall transfer the management of the Trust Account to the successor trustee, including but not limited to the transfer of copies of the reports and statements relating to the Trust Account, whereupon this Agreement shall terminate; provided, however, that in the event that the Company does not locate a successor trustee within ninety (90) days of receipt of the resignation notice from the Trustee, the Trustee may submit an application to have the Property deposited with any court in the State of New York or with the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York and upon such deposit, the Trustee shall be immune from any liability whatsoever; or

(b) At such time that the Trustee has completed the liquidation of the Trust Account and its obligations in accordance with the provisions of Section 1(i) hereof and distributed the Property in accordance with the provisions of the Termination Letter, this Agreement shall terminate except with respect to Section 2(b).

6. Miscellaneous.

(a) The Company and the Trustee each acknowledge that the Trustee will follow the security procedures set forth below with respect to funds transferred from the Trust Account. The Company and the Trustee will each restrict access to confidential information relating to such security procedures to authorized persons. Each party must notify the other party immediately if it has reason to believe unauthorized persons may have obtained access to such confidential information, or of any change in its authorized personnel. In executing funds transfers, the Trustee shall rely upon all information supplied to it by the Company, including, account names, account numbers, and all other identifying information relating to a Beneficiary, Beneficiary's bank or intermediary bank. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee shall not be liable for any loss, liability or expense resulting from any error in the information or transmission of the funds.



(b) This Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. This Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and together shall constitute but one instrument.

(c) This Agreement contains the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof. This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified (other than to correct a typographical error) by a writing signed by each of the parties hereto.

(d) This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified pursuant to Section 6(c) hereof with the Consent of the Stockholders, it being the specific intention of the parties hereto that each of the Company's stockholders is, and shall be, a third party beneficiary of this Section 6(d) with the same right and power to enforce this Section 6(d) as the other parties hereto. For purposes of this Section 6(d), the "*Consent of the Stockholders*" means receipt by the Trustee of a certificate from the inspector of elections of the stockholder meeting certifying that either (i) the Company's stockholders of record as of a record date established in accordance with Section 213(a) of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended ("*DGCL*") (or any successor rule), who hold sixty-five percent (65%) or more of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock have voted in favor of such change, amendment or modification, including a corresponding change to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation, or (ii) the Company's stockholders of record as of the record date who hold sixty-five percent (65%) or more of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock have delivered to such entity a signed writing approving such change, amendment or modification. No such amendment will affect any Public Stockholder who has otherwise indicated his election to redeem his share of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote sought to amend this Agreement, including a corresponding change to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee may rely conclusively on the certification from the inspector or elections referenced above and shall be relieved of all liability to any party for executing the proposed amendment in reliance thereon.

(e) The parties hereto consent to the jurisdiction and venue of any state or federal court located in the City of New York, State of New York, for purposes of resolving any disputes hereunder. **AS TO ANY CLAIM, CROSS-CLAIM OR COUNTERCLAIM IN ANY WAY RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY WAIVES THE RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY.**

(f) Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or by facsimile or email transmission:

if to the Trustee, to:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, NY 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez  
Email: fwolf@continentalstock.com  
Email: cgonzalez@continentalstock.com

if to the Company, to:

Eric J. Zahler  
President and Chief Executive Officer  
Monocle Acquisition Corporation  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022  
Email: eric@monoclepartnersllc.com

in each case, with copies to:

Greenberg Traurig, LLP  
1750 Tysons Boulevard, Suite 1000  
McLean, VA 22102  
Attn.: Jason T. Simon, Esq.  
Fax No.: (703) 714-8386  
Email: simonj@gtlaw.com

and

Cowen and Company, LLC  
599 Lexington Avenue, 20<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10022  
Attn.: Head of Equity Capital Markets  
Fax: (646) 562-1249

With a copy to:

Cowen and Company, LLC  
599 Lexington Avenue, 20<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10022  
Attn.: Bradley Friedman, Esq.  
Fax: (646) 562-1124

and

Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP  
1345 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10105  
Attn.: Douglas S. Ellenoff, Esq.  
Stuart Neuhauser, Esq.  
Richard Baumann, Esq.  
Fax No.: (212) 370-7889  
Email: ellenoff@egsllp.com

(g) This Agreement may not be assigned by the Trustee without the prior consent of the Company.

(h) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby represents that it has the full right and power and has been duly authorized to enter into this Agreement and to perform its respective obligations as contemplated hereunder. The Trustee acknowledges and agrees that it shall not make any claims or proceed against the Trust Account, including by way of set-off, and shall not be entitled to any funds in the Trust Account under any circumstance.

(i) This Agreement is the joint product of the Trustee and the Company and each provision hereof has been subject to the mutual consultation, negotiation and agreement of such parties and shall not be construed for or against any party hereto.

(j) This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of a signed counterpart of this Agreement by facsimile or electronic transmission shall constitute valid and sufficient delivery thereof.

(k) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby acknowledges and agrees that the Representative, on behalf of the Underwriters, is a third party beneficiary of this Agreement.

(l) Except as specified herein, no party to this Agreement may assign its rights or delegate its obligations hereunder to any other person or entity.

[Signature Page Follows]

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the parties have duly executed this Investment Management Trust Agreement as of the date first written above.

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, as Trustee

By: /s/ Francis E. Wolf, Jr.

Name: Francis E. Wolf, Jr.

Title: Vice President

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler

Name: Eric J. Zahler

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

[Signature Page to Investment Management Trust Agreement]

---

**SCHEDULE A**

<b>Fee Item</b>	<b>Time and method of payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Initial acceptance fee	Initial closing of Offering by wire transfer	\$ 3,500.00
Trustee administration fee	First year, initial closing of Offering by wire transfer; thereafter on the anniversary of the effective date of the Offering by wire transfer or check	\$ 10,000.00
Transaction processing fee for disbursements to Company under Section 1(i), (j) and (k)	Deduction by Trustee from accumulated income following disbursement made to Company under Section 1	\$ 250.00
Paying Agent services as required pursuant to Section 1(i) and 1(k)	Billed to Company upon delivery of service pursuant to Section 1(i) and 1(k)	Prevailing rates

EXHIBIT A

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Termination Letter

Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), this is to advise you that the Company has entered into an agreement with (the "**Target Business**") to consummate a business combination with Target Business (the "**Business Combination**") on or about [insert date]. The Company shall notify you at least forty-eight (48) hours in advance (or such shorter time as you may agree) of the actual date of the consummation of the Business Combination (the "**Consummation Date**"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to commence to liquidate all of the assets of the Trust Account on [insert date], and to transfer the proceeds into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to the effect that, on the Consummation Date, all of the funds held in the Trust Account will be immediately available for transfer to the account or accounts that the Company shall direct on the Consummation Date. It is acknowledged and agreed that while the funds are on deposit in the trust operating account at JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. awaiting distribution, the Company will not earn any interest or dividends.

On the Consummation Date (i) counsel for the Company shall deliver to you written notification that the Business Combination has been consummated, or will be consummated substantially concurrently with your transfer of funds to the accounts as directed by the Company (the "**Notification**") and (ii) the Company shall deliver to you (a) [an affidavit] [a certificate] of the Chief Executive Officer of the Company, which verifies that the Business Combination has been approved by a vote of the Company's stockholders, if a vote is held and (b) a written instruction signed by the Company with respect to the transfer of the funds held in the Trust Account, including payment of the M&A Fee from the Trust Account (the "**Instruction Letter**"). You are hereby directed and authorized to transfer the funds held in the Trust Account immediately upon your receipt of the Notification and the Instruction Letter, in accordance with the terms of the Instruction Letter. In the event that certain deposits held in the Trust Account may not be liquidated by the Consummation Date without penalty, you will notify the Company in writing of the same and the Company shall direct you as to whether such funds should remain in the Trust Account and be distributed after the Consummation Date to the Company. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated.

In the event that the Business Combination is not consummated on the Consummation Date described in the notice thereof and we have not notified you on or before the original Consummation Date of a new Consummation Date, then upon receipt by the Trustee of written instructions from the Company, the funds held in the Trust Account shall be reinvested as provided in Section 1(c) of the Trust Agreement on the business day immediately following the Consummation Date as set forth in such written instruction as soon thereafter as possible.

Very truly yours,

Monocle Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

**EXHIBIT B**

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Termination Letter

Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), this is to advise you that the Company has been unable to effect a business combination with a Target Business within the time frame specified in the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as described in the Company's Prospectus relating to the Offering. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to liquidate all of the assets in the Trust Account on \_\_\_\_\_, 20 and to transfer the total proceeds into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to await distribution to the Public Stockholders. The Company has selected [\_\_\_\_\_] <sup>(1)</sup> as the effective date for the purpose of determining when the Public Stockholders will be entitled to receive their share of the liquidation proceeds. You agree to be the Paying Agent of record and, in your separate capacity as Paying Agent, agree to distribute said funds directly to the Company's Public Stockholders in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement and the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated, except to the extent otherwise provided in Section 1(i) of the Trust Agreement.

Very truly yours,

Monocle Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

<sup>(1)</sup> 21 months from the closing of the Offering (or 24 months pursuant to the Extension).



**EXHIBIT C**

**[Letterhead of Company]**

**[Insert date]**

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Tax Payment Instruction

Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(j) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the Company \$ \_\_\_\_\_ of the interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds [to pay for the tax obligations as set forth on the attached tax return or tax statement]. In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter to the Company's operating account at:

**[WIRE INSTRUCTION INFORMATION]**

Very truly yours,

Monocle Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

**EXHIBIT D**

**[Letterhead of Company]**

**[Insert date]**

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. \_\_\_\_\_ Stockholder Redemption Withdrawal Instruction

Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(k) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the redeeming Public Stockholders of the Company \$ \_\_\_\_\_ of the principal and interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds to pay its Public Stockholders who have properly elected to have their shares of Common Stock redeemed by the Company in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the provisions of the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would affect the Company's pre-initial business combination activity and related stockholders' rights, including the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of its public shares of Common Stock if the Company does not complete its initial business combination within the required time period. As such, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries.

Very truly yours,

Monocle Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

**EXHIBIT E**

**[Letterhead of Company]**

**[Insert date]**

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
One State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Extension Letter

Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(l) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (“Company”) (the “**Company**”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “**Trustee**”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (the “**Trust Agreement**”), this is to advise you that the Company is extending the time available in order to consummate a Business Combination for an additional three (3) months, from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ (the “**Extension**”).

This Extension Letter shall serve as the notice required with respect to the Extension prior to the Business Combination Deadline. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to deposit \$ \_\_\_\_\_, which will be wired to you, into the Trust Account upon receipt. These funds should be invested in \_\_\_\_\_ or [the same manner as the funds currently on deposit in the Trust Account].

Very truly yours,

Monocle Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

**UNIT PURCHASE AGREEMENT**

THIS UNIT PURCHASE AGREEMENT, dated as of February 6, 2019 (as it may from time to time be amended, this **Agreement**), is entered into by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the **Company**), and Monocle Partners, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the **Purchaser**).

WHEREAS, the Company intends to consummate an underwritten initial public offering (the **Public Offering**) of 15,000,000 units (**Public Units**), with each such unit consisting of one share of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (**Common Stock**), of the Company and one redeemable warrant, where each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share (subject to certain adjustments);

WHEREAS, the underwriters for the Public Offering have the option to purchase up to an additional 2,250,000 Public Units within 45-days of the effectiveness of the Registration Statement on Form S-1 to be filed in connection with the Public Offering (the **Registration Statement**), solely to cover over-allotments (the **Over-Allotment Option**);

WHEREAS, the Purchaser wishes to purchase 541,667 units, or up to 591,334 units if the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full (the **Private Units**), in a private placement, as provided herein;

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual promises contained in this Agreement and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties to this Agreement hereby, intending legally to be bound, agree as follows:

**AGREEMENT****Section 1. Authorization, Purchase and Sale; Terms of the Private Units.**

A. Authorization of the Private Units. The Company has duly authorized the issuance and sale of the Private Units to the Purchaser, and the issuance and sale of the securities underlying the Private Units, including the shares of Common Stock included in the Private Units (the **Private Shares**), the warrants included in the Private Units (the **Private Warrants**), as well as, upon proper exercise of the Private Warrants and against payment therefor, the shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Warrants (together with the Private Shares, the **Unit Shares**) (the aforementioned underlying securities, collectively, the **Securities**).

B. Purchase and Sale of the Private Units.

(i) As payment in full for an initial tranche of 541,667 Private Units (the **Initial Private Units**) being purchased under this Agreement, Purchaser shall pay \$5,416,670 (the **Purchase Price**), by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the trust account (the **Trust Account**) at a financial institution to be chosen by the Company, maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee, at least one (1) business day prior to the closing of the Public Offering.

(ii) In the event that the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full or in part, Purchaser shall purchase up to an additional 49,667 Private Units (the **Additional Private Units**), in the same proportion as the amount of the Over-Allotment Option that is then exercised, and simultaneously with such purchase of Additional Private Units, as payment in full for the Additional Private Units being purchased hereunder, and at least one (1) business day prior to such closing of all or any portion of the Over-Allotment Option, Purchaser shall pay \$10.00 per Additional Private Unit, up to an aggregate amount of \$496,670 by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the Trust Account.

---

(iii) The closing of the purchase and sale of the Initial Private Units shall take place simultaneously with the closing of the Public Offering (the **“Initial Closing Date”**). The closing of any purchase and sale of Additional Private Units, if applicable, shall take place simultaneously with the applicable closing of all or any portion of the Over-Allotment Option (such closing dates, together with the Initial Closing Date, the **“Closing Dates”** and each, a **“Closing Date”**). The closings of the purchase and sale of the Initial Private Units and the Additional Private Units shall take place at the offices of Greenberg Traurig, LLP, the MetLife Building, 200 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10166, or such other place as may be agreed upon by the parties hereto.

C. Description of the Private Units.

(i) Each Private Unit shall include one share of Common Stock and one Private Warrant. Each Private Warrant shall entitle the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at a purchase price of \$11.50 per share (subject to certain adjustments);

(ii) The Private Warrants shall have the terms set forth in a warrant agreement (the **“Warrant Agreement”**) to be entered into by the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as warrant agent, in connection with the Public Offering;

(iii) At or prior to the time of the Initial Closing Date, the Company and the Purchaser shall enter into a registration rights agreement (the **Registration Rights Agreement**) pursuant to which the Company shall grant certain registration rights to the Purchaser relating to the Private Units, including the underlying Securities.

**Section 2. Representations and Warranties of the Company.** As a material inducement to the Purchaser to enter into this Agreement and purchase the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, the Company hereby represents and warrants to the Purchaser that:

A. Organization and Corporate Power. The Company is a corporation duly incorporated, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and is qualified to do business in every jurisdiction in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the financial condition, operating results or assets of the Company. The Company possesses all requisite corporate power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement.

B. Authorization; No Breach.

(i) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby, including the issuance of the Private Units (and the underlying Securities), have been duly authorized by the Company as of each of the Closing Dates. This Agreement constitutes the valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable in accordance with its terms. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms of the Warrant Agreement and this Agreement, the Private Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms.

(ii) The execution and delivery by the Company of this Agreement, and the fulfillment of, and compliance with, the respective terms hereof by the Company, including the issuance of the Private Units (and the underlying Securities), do not and will not as of any of the Closing Dates (a) conflict with or result in a breach of the terms, conditions or provisions of, (b) constitute a default under, (c) result in the creation of any lien, security interest, charge or encumbrance upon the Company’s capital stock or assets under, (d) result in a violation of, or (e) require any authorization, consent, approval, exemption or other action by or notice or declaration to, or filing with, any court or administrative or governmental body or agency pursuant to the certificate of incorporation or the bylaws of the Company (each, as in effect on the date hereof or as may be amended prior to completion of the Public Offering), or any material law, statute, rule or regulation to which the Company is subject, or any agreement, order, judgment or decree to which the Company is subject, except for any filings required after the date hereof under United States federal or state securities laws.

C. Title to Securities. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof, the Private Units, including the Private Warrants, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and, as applicable, the terms of the Warrant Agreement, the Unit Shares, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof, and, as applicable, the terms of the Warrant Agreement, the Purchaser will have good title to the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, free and clear of all liens, claims and encumbrances of any kind, other than (i) transfer restrictions hereunder and under the other agreements contemplated hereby, (ii) transfer restrictions under federal and state securities laws, and (iii) liens, claims or encumbrances imposed due to the actions of the Purchaser.

D. Governmental Consents. No permit, consent, approval or authorization of, or declaration to or filing with, any governmental authority is required in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement or the consummation by the Company of any other transactions contemplated hereby.

**Section 3. Representations and Warranties of the Purchaser.** As a material inducement to the Company to enter into this Agreement and issue and sell the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, to the Purchaser, the Purchaser hereby represents and warrants to the Company that:

A. Organization and Power. The Purchaser is a limited liability company duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and is qualified to do business in every jurisdiction in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the Purchaser's ability to purchase the Private Units. The Purchaser possesses all requisite power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement.

B. Authorization; No Breach.

(i) This Agreement constitutes a valid and binding obligation of the Purchaser, enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equitable principles (whether considered in a proceeding in equity or law).

(ii) The execution and delivery by the Purchaser of this Agreement and the fulfillment of and compliance with the terms hereof by the Purchaser does not and shall not as of the Closing Dates conflict with or result in a breach by the Purchaser of the terms, conditions or provisions of any agreement, instrument, order, judgment or decree to which the Purchaser is subject.

C. Investment Representations.

(i) The Purchaser is acquiring the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, for the Purchaser's own account, for investment purposes only and not with a view towards, or for resale in connection with, any public sale or distribution thereof.

(ii) The Purchaser is an "accredited investor" as such term is defined in Rule 501(a)(3) of Regulation D under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**").

(iii) The Purchaser understands that the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, are being offered and will be sold to it in reliance on specific exemptions from the registration requirements of the United States federal and state securities laws and that the Company is relying upon the truth and accuracy of, and the Purchaser's compliance with, the representations and warranties of the Purchaser set forth herein in order to determine the availability of such exemptions and the eligibility of the Purchaser to acquire the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

(iv) The Purchaser did not enter into this Agreement as a result of any general solicitation or general advertising within the meaning of Rule 502(c) under the Securities Act.

(v) The Purchaser has been furnished with all materials relating to the business, finances and operations of the Company and materials relating to the offer and sale of the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, which have been requested by the Purchaser. The Purchaser has been afforded the opportunity to ask questions of the executive officers and directors of the Company. The Purchaser understands that its investment in the Private Units, and the underlying Securities, involves a high degree of risk and it has sought such accounting, legal and tax advice as it has considered necessary to make an informed investment decision with respect to the acquisition of the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

(vi) The Purchaser understands that no United States federal or state agency or any other government or governmental agency has passed on or made any recommendation or endorsement of the Private Units, or the underlying Securities, or the fairness or suitability of the investment in the Private Units, or the underlying Securities, by the Purchaser nor have such authorities passed upon or endorsed the merits of the offering of the Private Units, including the underlying Securities.

(vii) The Purchaser understands that: (a) the Private Units and the underlying Securities have not been and are not being registered under the Securities Act or any state securities laws, and may not be offered for sale, sold, assigned or transferred unless (1) in a transaction subsequently registered thereunder or (2) sold in reliance on an exemption therefrom; and (b) except as specifically set forth in the Registration Rights Agreement, neither the Company nor any other person is under any obligation to register the Private Units or the underlying Securities under the Securities Act or any state securities laws or to comply with the terms and conditions of any exemption thereunder.

(viii) The Purchaser has such knowledge and experience in financial and business matters, knowledge of the high degree of risk associated with investments in the securities of companies in the development stage such as the Company, is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of an investment in the Securities and is able to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, in the amount contemplated hereunder for an indefinite period of time. The Purchaser has adequate means of providing for its current financial needs and contingencies and will have no current or anticipated future needs for liquidity which would be jeopardized by the investment in the Private Units or the underlying Securities. The Purchaser can afford a complete loss of its investments in the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

**Section 4. Conditions of the Purchaser's Obligations.** The obligations of the Purchaser to purchase and pay for the Private Units are subject to the fulfillment, on or before the applicable Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

A. Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties of the Company contained in Section 2 shall be true and correct at and as of the such Closing Date as though then made.

B. Performance. The Company shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by it on or before the such Closing Date.

C. No Injunction. No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.

D. Warrant Agreement and Registration Rights Agreement. The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company, as warrant agent, and the Registration Rights Agreement, substantially in the form filed as Exhibits 4.4 and 10.7, respectively, to the Registration Statement.

E. Insider Letter. The Company shall have entered into a letter (the "**Insider Letter**") by and among the Purchaser, the Company and certain other parties, setting forth certain voting agreements, restrictions on transfer (the "**Lock-ups**") and other agreements applicable to the Securities, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

**Section 5. Conditions of the Company's Obligations.** The obligations of the Company to the Purchaser under this Agreement are subject to the fulfillment, on or before the applicable Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

A. **Representations and Warranties.** The representations and warranties of the Purchaser contained in Section 3 shall be true and correct at and as of such Closing Date as though then made.

B. **Performance.** The Purchaser shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by the Purchaser on or before such Closing Date.

C. **No Injunction.** No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.

D. **Warrant Agreement and Registration Rights Agreement.** The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company, as warrant agent, and the Registration Rights Agreement, substantially in the form filed as Exhibits 4.4 and 10.7, respectively, to the Registration Statement.

E. **Insider Letter.** The Purchaser shall have entered into an Insider Letter setting forth certain voting agreements, Lock-ups and other agreements applicable to the Securities, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

**Section 6. Lock-ups.** The Purchaser acknowledges that the Securities will be subject to the Lock-ups contained in the Insider Letter.

**Section 7. Termination.** This Agreement may be terminated by the Company or the Purchaser at any time after March 31, 2019 upon written notice to the other party hereto if the closing of the Public Offering does not occur prior to such date.

**Section 8. Survival of Representations and Warranties.** All of the representations and warranties contained herein shall survive the Closing Dates.

**Section 9. Definitions.** Terms used but not otherwise defined in this Agreement shall have the meaning assigned to such terms in the Registration Statement.

**Section 10. Miscellaneous.**

A. **Successors and Assigns.** Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, all covenants and agreements contained in this Agreement by or on behalf of any of the parties hereto shall bind and inure to the benefit of the respective successors of the parties hereto whether so expressed or not. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything to the contrary herein, the parties may not assign this Agreement, other than assignments by the Purchaser to affiliates thereof.

B. **Severability.** Whenever possible, each provision of this Agreement shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Agreement is held to be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective only to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of this Agreement.

C. **Counterparts.** This Agreement may be executed simultaneously in two or more counterparts, none of which need contain the signatures of more than one party, but all such counterparts taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

D. **Descriptive Headings; Interpretation.** The descriptive headings of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and do not constitute a substantive part of this Agreement. The use of the word "including" in this Agreement shall be by way of example rather than by limitation.



E. Governing Law. This Agreement shall be deemed to be a contract made under the laws of the State of New York and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.

F. Amendments. This Agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by all parties hereto.

*[Signature page to follow]*

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement to be effective as of the date first set forth above.

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

/s/ Eric J. Zahler

Name: Eric J. Zahler

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

**MONOCLE PARTNERS, LLC**

/s/ Sai S. Devabhaktuni

Name: Sai S. Devabhaktuni

Title: Manager

[Signature Page to Unit Purchase Agreement (Monocle Partners, LLC)]

---

**UNIT PURCHASE AGREEMENT**

THIS UNIT PURCHASE AGREEMENT, dated as of February 6, 2019 (as it may from time to time be amended, this **Agreement**), is entered into by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the **Company**), and Cowen Investments II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the **Purchaser**).

WHEREAS, the Company intends to consummate an underwritten initial public offering (the **Public Offering**) of 15,000,000 units (**Public Units**), with each such unit consisting of one share of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (**Common Stock**), of the Company and one redeemable warrant, where each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share (subject to certain adjustments);

WHEREAS, the underwriters for the Public Offering have the option to purchase up to an additional 2,250,000 Public Units within 45-days of the effectiveness of the Registration Statement on Form S-1 to be filed in connection with the Public Offering (the **Registration Statement**), solely to cover over-allotments (the **Over-Allotment Option**);

WHEREAS, the Purchaser wishes to purchase 108,333 units, or up to 126,166 units if the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full (the **Private Units**), in a private placement, as provided herein;

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual promises contained in this Agreement and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties to this Agreement hereby, intending legally to be bound, agree as follows:

**AGREEMENT****Section 1. Authorization, Purchase and Sale; Terms of the Private Units.**

A. Authorization of the Private Units. The Company has duly authorized the issuance and sale of the Private Units to the Purchaser, and the issuance and sale of the securities underlying the Private Units, including the shares of Common Stock included in the Private Units (the **Private Shares**), the warrants included in the Private Units (the **Private Warrants**), as well as, upon proper exercise of the Private Warrants and against payment therefor, the shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Warrants (together with the Private Shares, the **Unit Shares**) (the aforementioned underlying securities, collectively, the **Securities**).

B. Purchase and Sale of the Private Units.

(i) As payment in full for an initial tranche of 108,333 Private Units (the **Initial Private Units**) being purchased under this Agreement, Purchaser shall pay \$1,083,330 (the **Purchase Price**), by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the trust account (the **Trust Account**) at a financial institution to be chosen by the Company, maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee, at least one (1) business day prior to the closing of the Public Offering.

(ii) In the event that the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full or in part, Purchaser shall purchase up to an additional 17,833 Private Units (the **Additional Private Units**), in the same proportion as the amount of the Over-Allotment Option that is then exercised, and simultaneously with such purchase of Additional Private Units, as payment in full for the Additional Private Units being purchased hereunder, and at least one (1) business day prior to such closing of all or any portion of the Over-Allotment Option, Purchaser shall pay \$10.00 per Additional Private Unit, up to an aggregate amount of \$178,330 by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the Trust Account.

---

(iii) The closing of the purchase and sale of the Initial Private Units shall take place simultaneously with the closing of the Public Offering (the **Initial Closing Date**). The closing of any purchase and sale of Additional Private Units, if applicable, shall take place simultaneously with the applicable closing of all or any portion of the Over-Allotment Option (such closing dates, together with the Initial Closing Date, the **Closing Dates** and each, a **Closing Date**). The closings of the purchase and sale of the Initial Private Units and the Additional Private Units shall take place at the offices of Greenberg Traurig, LLP, the MetLife Building, 200 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10166, or such other place as may be agreed upon by the parties hereto.

C. Description of the Private Units.

(i) Each Private Unit shall include one share of Common Stock and one Private Warrant. Each Private Warrant shall entitle the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at a purchase price of \$11.50 per share (subject to certain adjustments);

(ii) The Private Warrants shall have the terms set forth in a warrant agreement (the **Warrant Agreement**) to be entered into by the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as warrant agent, in connection with the Public Offering;

(iii) At or prior to the time of the Initial Closing Date, the Company and the Purchaser shall enter into a registration rights agreement (the **Registration Rights Agreement**) pursuant to which the Company shall grant certain registration rights to the Purchaser relating to the Private Units, including the underlying Securities.

**Section 2. Representations and Warranties of the Company.** As a material inducement to the Purchaser to enter into this Agreement and purchase the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, the Company hereby represents and warrants to the Purchaser that:

A. Organization and Corporate Power. The Company is a corporation duly incorporated, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and is qualified to do business in every jurisdiction in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the financial condition, operating results or assets of the Company. The Company possesses all requisite corporate power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement.

B. Authorization; No Breach.

(i) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby, including the issuance of the Private Units (and the underlying Securities), have been duly authorized by the Company as of each of the Closing Dates. This Agreement constitutes the valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable in accordance with its terms. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms of the Warrant Agreement and this Agreement, the Private Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms.

(ii) The execution and delivery by the Company of this Agreement, and the fulfillment of, and compliance with, the respective terms hereof by the Company, including the issuance of the Private Units (and the underlying Securities), do not and will not as of any of the Closing Dates (a) conflict with or result in a breach of the terms, conditions or provisions of, (b) constitute a default under, (c) result in the creation of any lien, security interest, charge or encumbrance upon the Company's capital stock or assets under, (d) result in a violation of, or (e) require any authorization, consent, approval, exemption or other action by or notice or declaration to, or filing with, any court or administrative or governmental body or agency pursuant to the certificate of incorporation or the bylaws of the Company (each, as in effect on the date hereof or as may be amended prior to completion of the Public Offering), or any material law, statute, rule or regulation to which the Company is subject, or any agreement, order, judgment or decree to which the Company is subject, except for any filings required after the date hereof under United States federal or state securities laws.

C. Title to Securities. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof, the Private Units, including the Private Warrants, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and, as applicable, the terms of the Warrant Agreement, the Unit Shares, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof, and, as applicable, the terms of the Warrant Agreement, the Purchaser will have good title to the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, free and clear of all liens, claims and encumbrances of any kind, other than (i) transfer restrictions hereunder and under the other agreements contemplated hereby, (ii) transfer restrictions under federal and state securities laws, and (iii) liens, claims or encumbrances imposed due to the actions of the Purchaser.

D. Governmental Consents. No permit, consent, approval or authorization of, or declaration to or filing with, any governmental authority is required in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement or the consummation by the Company of any other transactions contemplated hereby.

**Section 3. Representations and Warranties of the Purchaser.** As a material inducement to the Company to enter into this Agreement and issue and sell the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, to the Purchaser, the Purchaser hereby represents and warrants to the Company that:

A. Organization and Power. The Purchaser is a limited liability company duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and is qualified to do business in every jurisdiction in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the Purchaser's ability to purchase the Private Units. The Purchaser possesses all requisite power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement.

B. Authorization; No Breach.

(i) This Agreement constitutes a valid and binding obligation of the Purchaser, enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equitable principles (whether considered in a proceeding in equity or law).

(ii) The execution and delivery by the Purchaser of this Agreement and the fulfillment of and compliance with the terms hereof by the Purchaser does not and shall not as of the Closing Dates conflict with or result in a breach by the Purchaser of the terms, conditions or provisions of any agreement, instrument, order, judgment or decree to which the Purchaser is subject.

C. Investment Representations.

(i) The Purchaser is acquiring the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, for the Purchaser's own account, for investment purposes only and not with a view towards, or for resale in connection with, any public sale or distribution thereof.

(ii) The Purchaser is an "accredited investor" as such term is defined in Rule 501(a)(3) of Regulation D under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**").

(iii) The Purchaser understands that the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, are being offered and will be sold to it in reliance on specific exemptions from the registration requirements of the United States federal and state securities laws and that the Company is relying upon the truth and accuracy of, and the Purchaser's compliance with, the representations and warranties of the Purchaser set forth herein in order to determine the availability of such exemptions and the eligibility of the Purchaser to acquire the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

(iv) The Purchaser did not enter into this Agreement as a result of any general solicitation or general advertising within the meaning of Rule 502(c) under the Securities Act.

(v) The Purchaser has been furnished with all materials relating to the business, finances and operations of the Company and materials relating to the offer and sale of the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, which have been requested by the Purchaser. The Purchaser has been afforded the opportunity to ask questions of the executive officers and directors of the Company. The Purchaser understands that its investment in the Private Units, and the underlying Securities, involves a high degree of risk and it has sought such accounting, legal and tax advice as it has considered necessary to make an informed investment decision with respect to the acquisition of the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

(vi) The Purchaser understands that no United States federal or state agency or any other government or governmental agency has passed on or made any recommendation or endorsement of the Private Units, or the underlying Securities, or the fairness or suitability of the investment in the Private Units, or the underlying Securities, by the Purchaser nor have such authorities passed upon or endorsed the merits of the offering of the Private Units, including the underlying Securities.

(vii) The Purchaser understands that: (a) the Private Units and the underlying Securities have not been and are not being registered under the Securities Act or any state securities laws, and may not be offered for sale, sold, assigned or transferred unless (1) in a transaction subsequently registered thereunder or (2) sold in reliance on an exemption therefrom; and (b) except as specifically set forth in the Registration Rights Agreement, neither the Company nor any other person is under any obligation to register the Private Units or the underlying Securities under the Securities Act or any state securities laws or to comply with the terms and conditions of any exemption thereunder.

(viii) The Purchaser has such knowledge and experience in financial and business matters, knowledge of the high degree of risk associated with investments in the securities of companies in the development stage such as the Company, is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of an investment in the Securities and is able to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, in the amount contemplated hereunder for an indefinite period of time. The Purchaser has adequate means of providing for its current financial needs and contingencies and will have no current or anticipated future needs for liquidity which would be jeopardized by the investment in the Private Units or the underlying Securities. The Purchaser can afford a complete loss of its investments in the Private Units and the underlying Securities.

**Section 4. Conditions of the Purchaser's Obligations.** The obligations of the Purchaser to purchase and pay for the Private Units are subject to the fulfillment, on or before the applicable Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

A. Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties of the Company contained in Section 2 shall be true and correct at and as of the such Closing Date as though then made.

B. Performance. The Company shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by it on or before the such Closing Date.

C. No Injunction. No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.

D. Warrant Agreement and Registration Rights Agreement. The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company, as warrant agent, and the Registration Rights Agreement, substantially in the form filed as Exhibits 4.4 and 10.7, respectively, to the Registration Statement.

E. Insider Letter. The Company shall have entered into a letter (the "**Insider Letter**") by and among the Purchaser, the Company and certain other parties, setting forth certain voting agreements, restrictions on transfer (the "**Lock-ups**") and other agreements applicable to the Securities, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

**Section 5. Conditions of the Company's Obligations.** The obligations of the Company to the Purchaser under this Agreement are subject to the fulfillment, on or before the applicable Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

A. **Representations and Warranties.** The representations and warranties of the Purchaser contained in Section 3 shall be true and correct at and as of such Closing Date as though then made.

B. **Performance.** The Purchaser shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by the Purchaser on or before such Closing Date.

C. **No Injunction.** No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.

D. **Warrant Agreement and Registration Rights Agreement.** The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company, as warrant agent, and the Registration Rights Agreement, substantially in the form filed as Exhibits 4.4 and 10.7, respectively, to the Registration Statement.

E. **Insider Letter.** The Purchaser shall have entered into an Insider Letter setting forth certain voting agreements, Lock-ups and other agreements applicable to the Securities, substantially in the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

**Section 6. Lock-ups.** The Purchaser acknowledges that the Securities will be subject to the Lock-ups contained in the Insider Letter. Additionally, the Purchaser acknowledges that the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, will be deemed compensation by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ("FINRA") and will therefore be subject to lock-up for a period of 180 days immediately following the date of effectiveness of the Registration Statement or commencement of sales of the Public Offering, subject to certain limited exceptions, pursuant to Rule 5110(g)(1) of the FINRA Manual. Accordingly, the Private Units, including the underlying Securities, may not be sold, transferred, assigned, pledged or hypothecated for 180 days immediately following the effective date of the Registration Statement except to any underwriter or selected dealer participating in the Public Offering and the bona fide officers or partners of the Purchaser and any such participating underwriter or selected dealer nor may they be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the economic disposition of the securities by any person during such 180-day period.

**Section 7. Termination.** This Agreement may be terminated by the Company or the Purchaser at any time after March 31, 2019 upon written notice to the other party hereto if the closing of the Public Offering does not occur prior to such date.

**Section 8. Survival of Representations and Warranties.** All of the representations and warranties contained herein shall survive the Closing Dates.

**Section 9. Definitions.** Terms used but not otherwise defined in this Agreement shall have the meaning assigned to such terms in the Registration Statement.

**Section 10. Miscellaneous.**

A. **Successors and Assigns.** Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, all covenants and agreements contained in this Agreement by or on behalf of any of the parties hereto shall bind and inure to the benefit of the respective successors of the parties hereto whether so expressed or not. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything to the contrary herein, the parties may not assign this Agreement, other than assignments by the Purchaser to affiliates thereof.

B. **Severability.** Whenever possible, each provision of this Agreement shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Agreement is held to be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective only to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of this Agreement.

C. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed simultaneously in two or more counterparts, none of which need contain the signatures of more than one party, but all such counterparts taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

D. Descriptive Headings: Interpretation. The descriptive headings of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and do not constitute a substantive part of this Agreement. The use of the word “including” in this Agreement shall be by way of example rather than by limitation.

E. Governing Law. This Agreement shall be deemed to be a contract made under the laws of the State of New York and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.

F. Amendments. This Agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by all parties hereto.

*[Signature page to follow]*



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement to be effective as of the date first set forth above.

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

/s/ Eric J. Zahler

Name: Eric J. Zahler

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

**COWEN INVESTMENTS II LLC**

/s/ Owen Littman

Name: Owen Littman

Title: Authorized Signatory

[Signature Page to Unit Purchase Agreement (Cowen Investments II LLC)]

---

## REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT

THIS REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT (this "*Agreement*"), dated as of February 6, 2019, is made and entered into by and among Monocle Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "*Company*"), Monocle Partners, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "*Sponsor*"), Cowen Investments II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("*Cowen Investments*") and together with the Sponsor, the "*Founders*") and the undersigned parties listed under Holder on the signature pages hereto (each such party, together with the Sponsor, Cowen Investments and any person or entity who hereafter becomes a party to this Agreement pursuant to Section 5.2 of this Agreement, a "*Holder*" and collectively the "*Holder*s").

## RECITALS

**WHEREAS**, the Founders and certain other Holders collectively own an aggregate of 4,312,500 shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("*Common Stock*"), issued prior to the date hereof in certain private placements and subsequent transfers (collectively, the "*Founder Shares*");

**WHEREAS**, up to an aggregate of 562,500 Founder Shares are subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option in connection with the Company's initial public offering is not exercised in full;

**WHEREAS**, pursuant to separate agreements with the Company, the Founders have agreed to purchase an aggregate of 650,000 units of the Company (or up to 717,500 units if the underwriters' option to purchase additional units in connection with the Company's initial public offering is exercised in full) (the "*Private Units*"), with each such unit consisting of one share of Common Stock and one warrant (the "*Private Warrants*"), in a private placement transaction occurring simultaneously with the closing of the Company's initial public offering; each Private Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share; and

**WHEREAS**, the Company and the Holders desire to enter into this Agreement, pursuant to which the Company shall grant the Holders certain registration rights with respect to certain securities of the Company, as set forth in this Agreement.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, in consideration of the representations, covenants and agreements contained herein, and certain other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE I  
DEFINITIONS

1.1 Definitions. The terms defined in this *Article I* shall, for all purposes of this Agreement, have the respective meanings set forth below:

---

“**Adverse Disclosure**” shall mean any public disclosure of material non-public information, which disclosure, in the good faith judgment of the Chief Executive Officer or any principal financial officer of the Company, after consultation with counsel to the Company, (i) would be required to be made in any Registration Statement or Prospectus in order for the applicable Registration Statement or Prospectus not to contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements contained therein (in the case of any prospectus and any preliminary prospectus, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading, (ii) would not be required to be made at such time if the Registration Statement were not being filed, and (iii) the Company has a bona fide business purpose for not making such information public.

“**Agreement**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Board**” shall mean the Board of Directors of the Company.

“**Business Combination**” shall mean any merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses, involving the Company.

“**Commission**” shall mean the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“**Common Stock**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Company**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Cowen Investments**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Demand Registration**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Demanding Holder**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Exchange Act**” shall mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as it may be amended from time to time.

“**Form S-1**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Form S-3**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.3.

“**Founder Shares**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals.

“**Founders**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Holder**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Insider Letter**” shall mean that certain letter agreement, dated as of February 6, 2019, by and among the Company, the Founders and each of the Company’s officers, directors and director nominees.

“**Lock-up Period**” means, with respect to the Registrable Securities, the period ending on the earlier of one year after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination or earlier if, subsequent to the Business Combination, (x) the last sale price of the Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company’s initial Business Combination, or (y) such date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction that results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property.

“**Maximum Number of Securities**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.4.

“**Misstatement**” shall mean an untrue statement of a material fact or an omission to state a material fact required to be stated in a Registration Statement or Prospectus, or necessary to make the statements in a Registration Statement or Prospectus in the light of the circumstances under which they were made not misleading.

“**Permitted Transferees**” shall mean any person or entity to whom a Holder of Registrable Securities is permitted to transfer such Registrable Securities prior to the expiration of the Lock-up Period, as the case may be, under the Insider Letter and any other applicable agreement between such Holder and the Company, and to any transferee thereafter.

“**Piggyback Registration**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.2.1.

“**Private Units**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Private Warrants**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Prospectus**” shall mean the prospectus included in any Registration Statement, as supplemented by any and all prospectus supplements and as amended by any and all post-effective amendments and including all material incorporated by reference in such prospectus.

“**Registrable Security**” shall mean (a) the Founder Shares, (b) the Private Warrants (including any shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such Private Warrants), (c) the Private Units (including any shares of Common Stock and Private Warrants underlying the Private Units), (d) any outstanding share of Common Stock or any other equity security (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any other equity security) of the Company held by a Holder as of the date of this Agreement, (e) any equity securities (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such equity security) of the Company issuable upon conversion of any working capital loans in an amount up to \$1,500,000 made to the Company by a Holder, and (f) any other equity security of the Company issued or issuable with respect to any such share of Common Stock by way of a stock dividend or stock split or in connection with a combination of shares, recapitalization, merger, consolidation or reorganization; provided, however, that, as to any particular Registrable Security, such securities shall cease to be Registrable Securities when: (A) a Registration Statement with respect to the sale of such securities shall have become effective under the Securities Act and such securities shall have been sold, transferred, disposed of or exchanged in accordance with such Registration Statement; (B) such securities shall have been otherwise transferred, new certificates for such securities not bearing a legend restricting further transfer shall have been delivered by the Company and subsequent public distribution of such securities shall not require registration under the Securities Act; (C) such securities shall have ceased to be outstanding; (D) such securities may be sold without registration pursuant to Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission) (but with no volume or other restrictions or limitations); or (E) such securities have been sold to, or through, a broker, dealer or underwriter in a public distribution or other public securities transaction.

“**Registration**” shall mean a registration effected by preparing and filing a registration statement or similar document in compliance with the requirements of the Securities Act, and the applicable rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, and such registration statement becoming effective.

“**Registration Expenses**” shall mean the out-of-pocket expenses of a Registration, including, without limitation, the following:

(A) all registration and filing fees (including fees with respect to filings required to be made with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc.) and any securities exchange on which the Common Stock is then listed;

(B) fees and expenses of compliance with securities or blue sky laws (including reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters in connection with blue sky qualifications of Registrable Securities);

(C) printing, messenger, telephone and delivery expenses;

(D) reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company;

(E) reasonable fees and disbursements of all independent registered public accountants of the Company incurred specifically in connection with such Registration; and

(F) reasonable fees and expenses of one legal counsel selected by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration to be registered for offer and sale in the applicable Registration.

“**Registration Statement**” shall mean any registration statement that covers the Registrable Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement, including the Prospectus included in such registration statement, amendments (including post-effective amendments) and supplements to such registration statement, and all exhibits to and all material incorporated by reference in such registration statement.

“**Requesting Holder**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Securities Act**” shall mean the Securities Act of 1933, as amended from time to time.

“**Sponsor**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Underwriter**” shall mean a securities dealer who purchases any Registrable Securities as principal in an Underwritten Offering and not as part of such dealer’s market-making activities.

“**Underwritten Registration**” or “**Underwritten Offering**” shall mean a Registration in which securities of the Company are sold to an Underwriter in a firm commitment underwriting for distribution to the public.

## ARTICLE II REGISTRATIONS

### 2.1 Demand Registration.

2.1.1 Request for Registration. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, at any time and from time to time on or after the date the Company consummates the Business Combination, (i) Cowen Investments or (ii) the Holders of at least a majority in interest of the then-outstanding number of Registrable Securities (Cowen Investments or such Holders, as the case may be, the “**Demanding Holders**”), may make a written demand for Registration of all or part of their Registrable Securities, which written demand shall describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such Registration and the intended method(s) of distribution thereof (such written demand a “**Demand Registration**”). The Company shall, within ten (10) days of the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration, notify, in writing, all other Holders of Registrable Securities of such demand, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration (each such Holder that includes all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in such Registration, a “**Requesting Holder**”) shall so notify the Company, in writing, within five (5) days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. Upon receipt by the Company of any such written notification from a Requesting Holder(s) to the Company, such Requesting Holder(s) shall be entitled to have their Registrable Securities included in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration and the Company shall effect, as soon thereafter as practicable, but not more than forty five (45) days immediately after the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration, the Registration of all Registrable Securities requested by the Demanding Holders and Requesting Holders pursuant to such Demand Registration. Under no circumstances shall the Company be obligated to effect more than an aggregate of three (3) Registrations pursuant to a Demand Registration under this subsection 2.1.1 with respect to any or all Registrable Securities; provided, however, that (i) this limitation shall not apply to any Demand Registration initiated by Cowen Investments which shall be governed by Section 3.6 and (ii) a Registration shall not be counted for such purposes unless a Form S-1 or any similar long-form registration statement that may be available at such time (“**Form S-1**”) has become effective and all of the Registrable Securities requested by the Requesting Holders to be registered on behalf of the Requesting Holders in such Form S-1 Registration have been sold, in accordance with Section 3.1 of this Agreement.

2.1.2 Effective Registration. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection 2.1.1 above or any other part of this Agreement, a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration shall not count as a Registration unless and until (i) the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration has been declared effective by the Commission and (ii) the Company has complied with all of its obligations under this Agreement with respect thereto; provided, further, that if, after such Registration Statement has been declared effective, an offering of Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration is subsequently interfered with by any stop order or injunction of the Commission, federal or state court or any other governmental agency the Registration Statement with respect to such Registration shall be deemed not to have been declared effective, unless and until, (i) such stop order or injunction is removed, rescinded or otherwise terminated, and (ii) a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating such Demand Registration thereafter affirmatively elect to continue with such Registration and accordingly notify the Company in writing, but in no event later than five (5) days, of such election; provided, further, that the Company shall not be obligated or required to file another Registration Statement until the Registration Statement that has been previously filed with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration becomes effective or is subsequently terminated.

2.1.3 Underwritten Offering. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, if a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders so advise the Company as part of their Demand Registration that the offering of the Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration shall be in the form of an Underwritten Offering, then the right of such Demanding Holder or Requesting Holder (if any) to include its Registrable Securities in such Registration shall be conditioned upon such Holder's participation in such Underwritten Offering and the inclusion of such Holder's Registrable Securities in such Underwritten Offering to the extent provided herein. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.1.3 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating the Demand Registration.

2.1.4 Reduction of Underwritten Offering. If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration, in good faith, advises the Company, the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) in writing that the dollar amount or number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) desire to sell, taken together with all other Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell and the Common Stock, if any, as to which a Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights held by any other stockholders who desire to sell, exceeds the maximum dollar amount or maximum number of equity securities that can be sold in the Underwritten Offering without adversely affecting the proposed offering price, the timing, the distribution method, or the probability of success of such offering (such maximum dollar amount or maximum number of such securities, as applicable, the "**Maximum Number of Securities**"), then the Company shall include in such Underwritten Offering, as follows: (i) first, the Registrable Securities of the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) (pro rata based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Demanding Holder and Requesting Holder (if any) has requested be included in such Underwritten Registration and the aggregate number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and Requesting Holders have requested be included in such Underwritten Registration) that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (ii) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (i), Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (iii) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), Common Stock or other equity securities of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register in a Registration pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons and that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

2.1.5 Demand Registration Withdrawal. Cowen Investments (in the case of a Registration under subsection 2.1.1 demanded by Cowen Investments), a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration or a majority-in-interest of the Requesting Holders (if any), pursuant to a Registration under subsection 2.1.1 shall have the right to withdraw from a Registration pursuant to such Demand Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of their intention to withdraw from such Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to the Registration of their Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration. If a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration or a majority-in-interest of the Requesting Holders (if any), withdraws from a proposed offering pursuant to this Section 2.1.5, then such registration shall not count as a Demand Registration provided for in Section 2.1, and, if Cowen Investments withdraws, Sections 2.1 and 3.6. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.1.5; provided that if the Company pays such expenses related to a Demand Registration initiated by Cowen Investments, such registration shall count as a Demand Registration for purposes of Section 3.6.

## 2.2 Piggyback Registration.

2.2.1 Piggyback Rights. If, at any time on or after the date the Company consummates a Business Combination, the Company proposes to file a Registration Statement under the Securities Act with respect to an offering of equity securities, or securities or other obligations exercisable or exchangeable for, or convertible into equity securities, for its own account or for the account of stockholders of the Company (or by the Company and by the stockholders of the Company including, without limitation, pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof), other than a Registration Statement (i) filed in connection with any employee stock option or other benefit plan, (ii) for an exchange offer or offering of securities solely to the Company's existing stockholders, (iii) for an offering of debt that is convertible into equity securities of the Company or (iv) for a dividend reinvestment plan, then the Company shall give written notice of such proposed filing to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities as soon as practicable but not less than ten (10) days before the anticipated filing date of such Registration Statement, which notice shall (A) describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such offering, the intended method(s) of distribution, and the name of the proposed managing Underwriter or Underwriters, if any, in such offering, and (B) offer to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities the opportunity to register the sale of such number of Registrable Securities as such Holders may request in writing within five (5) days after receipt of such written notice (such Registration a "**Piggyback Registration**"). The Company shall, in good faith, cause such Registrable Securities to be included in such Piggyback Registration and shall use its best efforts to cause the managing Underwriter or Underwriters of a proposed Underwritten Offering to permit the Registrable Securities requested by the Holders pursuant to this subsection 2.2.1 to be included in a Piggyback Registration on the same terms and conditions as any similar securities of the Company included in such Registration and to permit the sale or other disposition of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended method(s) of distribution thereof. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.2.1 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the Company.



2.2.2 Reduction of Piggyback Registration. If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration that is to be a Piggyback Registration, in good faith, advises the Company and the Holders of Registrable Securities participating in the Piggyback Registration in writing that the dollar amount or number of shares of Common Stock that the Company desires to sell, taken together with (i) the shares of Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been demanded pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities hereunder, (ii) the Registrable Securities as to which registration has been requested pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof, and (iii) the shares of Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, exceeds the Maximum Number of Securities, then:

If the Registration is undertaken for the Company's account, the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1 hereof, pro rata, based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Holder has so requested, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and

If the Registration is pursuant to a request by persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, then the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, Common Stock or other equity securities, if any, of such requesting persons or entities, other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1, pro rata based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Holder has requested be included in such Underwritten Registration and the aggregate number of Registrable Securities that the Holders have requested to be included in such Underwritten Registration, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (D) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A), (B) and (C), Common Stock or other equity securities for the account of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons or entities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

2.2.3 Piggyback Registration Withdrawal. Any Holder of Registrable Securities shall have the right to withdraw from a Piggyback Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of his, her or its intention to withdraw from such Piggyback Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to such Piggyback Registration. The Company (whether on its own good faith determination or as the result of a request for withdrawal by persons pursuant to separate written contractual obligations) may withdraw a Registration Statement filed with the Commission in connection with a Piggyback Registration at any time prior to the effectiveness of such Registration Statement. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with the Piggyback Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.2.3.

2.2.4 Unlimited Piggyback Registration Rights. For purposes of clarity, any Registration effected pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof shall not be counted as a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration effected under Section 2.1 hereof.

2.3 Registrations on Form S-3. The Holders of Registrable Securities may at any time, and from time to time, request in writing that the Company, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), register the resale of any or all of their Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or any similar short form registration statement that may be available at such time ("**Form S-3**"); provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to effect such request through an Underwritten Offering. Within five (5) days of the Company's receipt of a written request from a Holder or Holders of Registrable Securities for a Registration on Form S-3, the Company shall promptly give written notice of the proposed Registration on Form S-3 to all other Holders of Registrable Securities, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities in such Registration on Form S-3 shall so notify the Company, in writing, within ten (10) days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. As soon as practicable thereafter, but not more than twelve (12) days after the Company's initial receipt of such written request for a Registration on Form S-3, the Company shall register all or such portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities as are specified in such written request, together with all or such portion of Registrable Securities of any other Holder or Holders joining in such request as are specified in the written notification given by such Holder or Holders; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to effect any such Registration pursuant to Section 2.3 hereof if (i) a Form S-3 is not available for such offering; or (ii) the Holders of Registrable Securities, together with the Holders of any other equity securities of the Company entitled to inclusion in such Registration, propose to sell the Registrable Securities and such other equity securities (if any) at any aggregate price to the public of less than \$10,000,000.

2.4 Restrictions on Registration Rights. If (A) during the period starting with the date sixty (60) days prior to the Company's good faith estimate of the date of the filing of, and ending on a date one hundred and twenty (120) days after the effective date of, a Company initiated Registration and provided that the Company has delivered written notice to the Holders prior to receipt of a Demand Registration pursuant to subsection 2.1.1 and it continues to actively employ, in good faith, all reasonable efforts to cause the applicable Registration Statement to become effective; (B) the Holders have requested an Underwritten Registration and the Company and the Holders are unable to obtain the commitment of underwriters to firmly underwrite the offer; or (C) in the good faith judgment of the Board such Registration would be seriously detrimental to the Company and the Board concludes as a result that it is essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement at such time, then in each case the Company shall furnish to such Holders a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board stating that in the good faith judgment of the Board it would be seriously detrimental to the Company for such Registration Statement to be filed in the near future and that it is therefore essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement. In such event, the Company shall have the right to defer such filing for a period of not more than thirty (30) days; provided, however, that the Company shall not defer its obligation in this manner more than once in any 12 month period. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Agreement, no Registration Statement shall become effective with respect to any Registrable Securities held by any Holder until after the expiration of the Lock-up Period.

### ARTICLE III COMPANY PROCEDURES

3.1 General Procedures. If at any time on or after the date the Company consummates a Business Combination the Company is required to effect the Registration of Registrable Securities, the Company shall use its best efforts to effect such Registration to permit the sale of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended plan of distribution thereof, and pursuant thereto the Company shall, as expeditiously as possible:

3.1.1 prepare and file with the Commission as soon as practicable a Registration Statement with respect to such Registrable Securities and use its reasonable best efforts to cause such Registration Statement to become effective and remain effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement have been sold;

3.1.2 prepare and file with the Commission such amendments and post-effective amendments to the Registration Statement, and such supplements to the Prospectus, as may be reasonably requested by the Holders or any Underwriter of Registrable Securities or as may be required by the rules, regulations or instructions applicable to the registration form used by the Company or by the Securities Act or rules and regulations thereunder to keep the Registration Statement effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement are sold in accordance with the intended plan of distribution set forth in such Registration Statement or supplement to the Prospectus;

3.1.3 prior to filing a Registration Statement or prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, furnish without charge to the Underwriters, if any, and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration, and such Holders' legal counsel, copies of such Registration Statement as proposed to be filed, each amendment and supplement to such Registration Statement (in each case including all exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein), the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement (including each preliminary Prospectus), and such other documents as the Underwriters and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration or the legal counsel for any such Holders may request in order to facilitate the disposition of the Registrable Securities owned by such Holders;

3.1.4 prior to any public offering of Registrable Securities, use its best efforts to (i) register or qualify the Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement under such securities or "blue sky" laws of such jurisdictions in the United States as the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement (in light of their intended plan of distribution) may request and (ii) take such action necessary to cause such Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement to be registered with or approved by such other governmental authorities as may be necessary by virtue of the business and operations of the Company and do any and all other acts and things that may be necessary or advisable to enable the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement to consummate the disposition of such Registrable Securities in such jurisdictions; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to qualify generally to do business in any jurisdiction where it would not otherwise be required to qualify or take any action to which it would be subject to general service of process or taxation in any such jurisdiction where it is not then otherwise so subject;

3.1.5 cause all such Registrable Securities to be listed on each securities exchange or automated quotation system on which similar securities issued by the Company are then listed;

3.1.6 provide a transfer agent or warrant agent, as applicable, and registrar for all such Registrable Securities no later than the effective date of such Registration Statement;

3.1.7 advise each seller of such Registrable Securities, promptly after it shall receive notice or obtain knowledge thereof, of the issuance of any stop order by the Commission suspending the effectiveness of such Registration Statement or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose and promptly use its reasonable best efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such stop order should be issued;

3.1.8 at least five (5) days prior to the filing of any Registration Statement or Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to such Registration Statement or Prospectus, furnish a copy thereof to each seller of such Registrable Securities or its counsel;

3.1.9 notify the Holders at any time when a Prospectus relating to such Registration Statement is required to be delivered under the Securities Act, of the happening of any event as a result of which the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement, as then in effect, includes a Misstatement, and then to correct such Misstatement as set forth in Section 3.4 hereof;

3.1.10 permit a representative of the Holders, the Underwriters, if any, and any attorney or accountant retained by such Holders or Underwriter to participate, at each such person's own expense, in the preparation of the Registration Statement, and cause the Company's officers, directors and employees to supply all information reasonably requested by any such representative, Underwriter, attorney or accountant in connection with the Registration; provided, however, that such representatives or Underwriters enter into a confidentiality agreement, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Company, prior to the release or disclosure of any such information;

3.1.11 obtain a "cold comfort" letter from the Company's independent registered public accountants in the event of an Underwritten Registration, in customary form and covering such matters of the type customarily covered by "cold comfort" letters as the managing Underwriter may reasonably request, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority-in-interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.12 on the date the Registrable Securities are delivered for sale pursuant to such Registration, obtain an opinion, dated such date, of counsel representing the Company for the purposes of such Registration, addressed to the Holders, the placement agent or sales agent, if any, and the Underwriters, if any, covering such legal matters with respect to the Registration in respect of which such opinion is being given as the Holders, placement agent, sales agent, or Underwriter may reasonably request and as are customarily included in such opinions and negative assurance letters, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority in interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.13 in the event of any Underwritten Offering, enter into and perform its obligations under an underwriting agreement, in usual and customary form, with the managing Underwriter of such offering;

3.1.14 make available to its security holders, as soon as reasonably practicable, an earnings statement covering the period of at least twelve (12) months beginning with the first day of the Company's first full calendar quarter after the effective date of the Registration Statement which satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 thereunder (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission);

3.1.15 if the Registration involves the Registration of Registrable Securities involving gross proceeds in excess of \$50,000,000, use its reasonable efforts to make available senior executives of the Company to participate in customary "road show" presentations that may be reasonably requested by the Underwriter in any Underwritten Offering; and

3.1.16 otherwise, in good faith, cooperate reasonably with, and take such customary actions as may reasonably be requested by the Holders, in connection with such Registration.

3.2 Registration Expenses. The Registration Expenses of all Registrations shall be borne by the Company. It is acknowledged by the Holders that the Holders shall bear all incremental selling expenses relating to the sale of Registrable Securities, such as Underwriters' commissions and discounts, brokerage fees, Underwriter marketing costs and, other than as set forth in the definition of "**Registration Expenses**," all reasonable fees and expenses of any legal counsel representing the Holders.

3.3 Requirements for Participation in Underwritten Offerings No person may participate in any Underwritten Offering for equity securities of the Company pursuant to a Registration initiated by the Company hereunder unless such person (i) agrees to sell such person's securities on the basis provided in any underwriting arrangements approved by the Company and (ii) completes and executes all customary questionnaires, powers of attorney, indemnities, lock-up agreements, underwriting agreements and other customary documents as may be reasonably required under the terms of such underwriting arrangements.

3.4 Suspension of Sales: Adverse Disclosure Upon receipt of written notice from the Company that a Registration Statement or Prospectus contains a Misstatement, each of the Holders shall forthwith discontinue disposition of Registrable Securities until he, she or it has received copies of a supplemented or amended Prospectus correcting the Misstatement (it being understood that the Company hereby covenants to prepare and file such supplement or amendment as soon as practicable after the time of such notice), or until he, she or it is advised in writing by the Company that the use of the Prospectus may be resumed. If the filing, initial effectiveness or continued use of a Registration Statement in respect of any Registration at any time would require the Company to make an Adverse Disclosure or would require the inclusion in such Registration Statement of financial statements that are unavailable to the Company for reasons beyond the Company's control, the Company may, upon giving prompt written notice of such action to the Holders, delay the filing or initial effectiveness of, or suspend use of, such Registration Statement for the shortest period of time, but in no event more than thirty (30) days, determined in good faith by the Company to be necessary for such purpose. In the event the Company exercises its rights under the preceding sentence, the Holders agree to suspend, immediately upon their receipt of the notice referred to above, their use of the Prospectus relating to any Registration in connection with any sale or offer to sell Registrable Securities. The Company shall immediately notify the Holders of the expiration of any period during which it exercised its rights under this Section 3.4.

3.5 Reporting Obligations. As long as any Holder shall own Registrable Securities, the Company, at all times while it shall be a reporting company under the Exchange Act, covenants to file timely (or obtain extensions in respect thereof and file within the applicable grace period) all reports required to be filed by the Company after the date hereof pursuant to Sections 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and to promptly furnish the Holders with true and complete copies of all such filings. The Company further covenants that it shall take such further action as any Holder may reasonably request, all to the extent required from time to time to enable such Holder to sell shares of Common Stock held by such Holder without registration under the Securities Act within the limitation of the exemptions provided by Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), including providing any legal opinions. Upon the request of any Holder, the Company shall deliver to such Holder a written certification of a duly authorized officer as to whether it has complied with such requirements.

3.6 Limitations on Registration Rights. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, (i) Cowen Investments may not exercise its rights under Sections 2.1 and 2.2 hereunder after five (5) and seven (7) years, respectively, from the effective date of the Company's registration statement on Form S-1, File No. 333-228470, and (ii) Cowen Investments may not exercise its rights under Section 2.1 more than one time.

#### ARTICLE IV INDEMNIFICATION AND CONTRIBUTION

##### 4.1 Indemnification.

4.1.1 The Company agrees to indemnify, to the extent permitted by law, each Holder of Registrable Securities, its officers and directors and agents and each person who controls such Holder (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against all losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including attorneys' fees) caused by any untrue or alleged untrue statement of material fact contained in any Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission or alleged omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, except insofar as the same are caused by or contained in any information furnished in writing to the Company by such Holder expressly for use therein. The Company shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers and directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to the indemnification of the Holder.

4.1.2 In connection with any Registration Statement in which a Holder of Registrable Securities is participating, such Holder shall furnish to the Company in writing such information and affidavits as the Company reasonably requests for use in connection with any such Registration Statement or Prospectus and, to the extent permitted by law, shall indemnify the Company, its directors and officers and agents and each person who controls the Company (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including without limitation reasonable attorneys' fees) resulting from any untrue statement of material fact contained in the Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, but only to the extent that such untrue statement or omission is contained in any information or affidavit so furnished in writing by such Holder expressly for use therein; provided, however, that the obligation to indemnify shall be several, not joint and several, among such Holders of Registrable Securities, and the liability of each such Holder of Registrable Securities shall be in proportion to and limited to the net proceeds received by such Holder from the sale of Registrable Securities pursuant to such Registration Statement. The Holders of Registrable Securities shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers, directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to indemnification of the Company.

4.1.3 Any person entitled to indemnification herein shall (i) give prompt written notice to the indemnifying party of any claim with respect to which it seeks indemnification (provided that the failure to give prompt notice shall not impair any person's right to indemnification hereunder to the extent such failure has not materially prejudiced the indemnifying party) and (ii) unless in such indemnified party's reasonable judgment a conflict of interest between such indemnified and indemnifying parties may exist with respect to such claim, permit such indemnifying party to assume the defense of such claim with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party. If such defense is assumed, the indemnifying party shall not be subject to any liability for any settlement made by the indemnified party without its consent (but such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld). An indemnifying party who is not entitled to, or elects not to, assume the defense of a claim shall not be obligated to pay the fees and expenses of more than one counsel for all parties indemnified by such indemnifying party with respect to such claim, unless in the reasonable judgment of any indemnified party a conflict of interest may exist between such indemnified party and any other of such indemnified parties with respect to such claim. No indemnifying party shall, without the consent of the indemnified party, consent to the entry of any judgment or enter into any settlement which cannot be settled in all respects by the payment of money (and such money is so paid by the indemnifying party pursuant to the terms of such settlement) or which settlement does not include as an unconditional term thereof the giving by the claimant or plaintiff to such indemnified party of a release from all liability in respect to such claim or litigation.

4.1.4 The indemnification provided for under this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the indemnified party or any officer, director or controlling person of such indemnified party and shall survive the transfer of securities. The Company and each Holder of Registrable Securities participating in an offering also agrees to make such provisions as are reasonably requested by any indemnified party for contribution to such party in the event the Company's or such Holder's indemnification is unavailable for any reason.

4.1.5 If the indemnification provided under Section 4.1 hereof from the indemnifying party is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party in respect of any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses referred to herein, then the indemnifying party, in lieu of indemnifying the indemnified party, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by the indemnified party as a result of such losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the indemnifying party and the indemnified party, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of the indemnifying party and indemnified party shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any action in question, including any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact, was made by, or relates to information supplied by, such indemnifying party or indemnified party, and the indemnifying party's and indemnified party's relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such action; provided, however, that the liability of any Holder under this subsection 4.1.5 shall be limited to the amount of the net proceeds received by such Holder in such offering giving rise to such liability. The amount paid or payable by a party as a result of the losses or other liabilities referred to above shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth in subsections 4.1.1, 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 above, any legal or other fees, charges or expenses reasonably incurred by such party in connection with any investigation or proceeding. The parties hereto agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 were determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation, which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in this subsection 4.1.5. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.



**ARTICLE V**  
**MISCELLANEOUS**

5.1 Notices. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be in writing and given by (i) deposit in the United States mail, addressed to the party to be notified, postage prepaid and registered or certified with return receipt requested, (ii) delivery in person or by courier service providing evidence of delivery, or (iii) transmission by hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile. Each notice or communication that is mailed, delivered, or transmitted in the manner described above shall be deemed sufficiently given, served, sent, and received, in the case of mailed notices, on the third business day following the date on which it is mailed and, in the case of notices delivered by courier service, hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile, at such time as it is delivered to the addressee (with the delivery receipt or the affidavit of messenger) or at such time as delivery is refused by the addressee upon presentation. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be addressed, if to the Company, to: 750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501, New York, NY 10022, Attention: Eric J. Zahler, and, if to any Holder, at such Holder's address or facsimile number as set forth in the Company's books and records. Any party may change its address for notice at any time and from time to time by written notice to the other parties hereto, and such change of address shall become effective thirty (30) days after delivery of such notice as provided in this Section 5.1.

5.2 Assignment; No Third Party Beneficiaries.

5.2.1 This Agreement and the rights, duties and obligations of the Company hereunder may not be assigned or delegated by the Company in whole or in part.

5.2.2 Prior to the expiration of the Lock-up Period, no Holder may assign or delegate such Holder's rights, duties or obligations under this Agreement, in whole or in part, except in connection with a transfer of Registrable Securities by such Holder to a Permitted Transferee, but only if such Permitted Transferee agrees to become bound by the transfer restrictions set forth in this Agreement and other applicable agreements.

5.2.3 This Agreement and the provisions hereof shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of each of the parties and its successors and the permitted assigns of the Holders, which shall include Permitted Transferees.

5.2.4 This Agreement shall not confer any rights or benefits on any persons that are not parties hereto, other than as expressly set forth in this Agreement and Section 5.2 hereof.

5.2.5 No assignment by any party hereto of such party's rights, duties and obligations hereunder shall be binding upon or obligate the Company unless and until the Company shall have received (i) written notice of such assignment as provided in Section 5.1 hereof and (ii) the written agreement of the assignee, in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Company, to be bound by the terms and provisions of this Agreement (which may be accomplished by an addendum or certificate of joinder to this Agreement). Any transfer or assignment made other than as provided in this Section 5.2 shall be null and void.

5.3 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in multiple counterparts (including facsimile or PDF counterparts), each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which together shall constitute the same instrument, but only one of which need be produced.

5.4 Governing Law; Venue. NOTWITHSTANDING THE PLACE WHERE THIS AGREEMENT MAY BE EXECUTED BY ANY OF THE PARTIES HERETO, THE PARTIES EXPRESSLY AGREE THAT (I) THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK AS APPLIED TO AGREEMENTS AMONG NEW YORK RESIDENTS ENTERED INTO AND TO BE PERFORMED ENTIRELY WITHIN NEW YORK AND (II) THE VENUE FOR ANY ACTION TAKEN WITH RESPECT TO THE AGREEMENT SHALL BE ANY STATE OR FEDERAL COURT IN NEW YORK COUNTY IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK.

EACH PARTY HERETO ACKNOWLEDGES AND AGREES THAT ANY CONTROVERSY WHICH MAY ARISE UNDER THIS AGREEMENT IS LIKELY TO INVOLVE COMPLICATED AND DIFFICULT ISSUES, AND, THEREFORE, EACH SUCH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY AND UNCONDITIONALLY WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT SUCH PARTY MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT TO ANY ACTION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED BY THIS AGREEMENT.

5.5 Amendments and Modifications. Upon the written consent of the Company and the Holders of at least a majority in interest of the Registrable Securities at the time in question, compliance with any of the provisions, covenants and conditions set forth in this Agreement may be waived, or any of such provisions, covenants or conditions may be amended or modified; provided, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, any amendment hereto or waiver hereof that adversely affects one Holder, solely in his, her or its capacity as a holder of the shares of capital stock of the Company, in a manner that is materially different from the other Holders (in such capacity) shall require the consent of the Holder so affected. No course of dealing between any Holder or the Company and any other party hereto or any failure or delay on the part of a Holder or the Company in exercising any rights or remedies under this Agreement shall operate as a waiver of any rights or remedies of any Holder or the Company. No single or partial exercise of any rights or remedies under this Agreement by a party shall operate as a waiver or preclude the exercise of any other rights or remedies hereunder or thereunder by such party.

5.6 Other Registration Rights. The Company represents and warrants that no person, other than a Holder of Registrable Securities, has any right to require the Company to register any securities of the Company for sale or to include such securities of the Company in any Registration filed by the Company for the sale of securities for its own account or for the account of any other person. Further, the Company represents and warrants that this Agreement supersedes any other registration rights agreement or agreement with similar terms and conditions and in the event of a conflict between any such agreement or agreements and this Agreement, the terms of this Agreement shall prevail.

5.7 Term. This Agreement shall terminate upon the earlier of (i) the tenth anniversary of the date of this Agreement or (ii) the date as of which (A) all of the Registrable Securities have been sold pursuant to a Registration Statement (but in no event prior to the applicable period referred to in Section 4(a)(3) of the Securities Act and Rule 174 thereunder (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission)) or (B) no Registrable Securities remain outstanding. The provisions of Section 3.5 and Article IV shall survive any termination.

**[SIGNATURE PAGES FOLLOW]**

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Agreement to be executed as of the date first written above.

COMPANY:

MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION,  
a Delaware corporation

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

HOLDERS:

MONOCLE PARTNERS, LLC,  
a Delaware limited liability company

By: /s/ Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Name: Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Title: Manager

COWEN INVESTMENTS II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company

By: /s/ Owen Littman  
Name: Owen Littman  
Title: Authorized Signatory

/s/ C. Robert Kehler  
C. Robert Kehler

/s/ Donald W. Manvel  
Donald W. Manvel

/s/ John C. Pescatore  
John C. Pescatore

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**Monocle Acquisition Corporation**  
**750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501**  
**New York, NY 10022**

February 6, 2019

Monocle Management LLC  
750 Lexington Avenue, Suite 1501  
New York, NY 10022

Re: Administrative Services Agreement

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This letter agreement by and between Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the “**Company**”) and Monocle Management LLC (“**Management**”), dated as of the date hereof, will confirm our agreement that, commencing on the date the securities of the Company are first listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market (the “**Listing Date**”), and continuing until the earlier of the consummation by the Company of an initial business combination and the Company’s liquidation (in each case as described in the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-228470) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission) (such earlier date hereinafter referred to as the “**Termination Date**”), Management shall make available to the Company certain office space and general and administrative services as may be reasonably requested by the Company. In exchange therefor, the Company shall pay Management the sum of \$10,000 per month on the Listing Date and continuing monthly thereafter until the Termination Date.

Management hereby irrevocably waives any and all right, title, interest, causes of action and claims of any kind (each, a “**Claim**”) in or to, and any and all right to seek payment of any amounts due to it out of, the trust account established for the benefit of the public stockholders of the Company and into which substantially all of the proceeds of the Company’s initial public offering will be deposited (the “**Trust Account**”), and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim it has or may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, this letter agreement, which Claim would reduce, encumber or otherwise adversely affect the Trust Account or any monies or other assets in the Trust Account, and further agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction of any Claim against the Trust Account or any monies or other assets in the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

This letter agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of its subject matter and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby.

This letter agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by all parties hereto.

No party hereto may assign either this letter agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written approval of the other party. Any purported assignment in violation of this paragraph shall be void and ineffectual and shall not operate to transfer or assign any interest or title to the purported assignee.

This letter agreement, the entire relationship of the parties hereto, and any litigation between the parties (whether grounded in contract, tort, statute, law or equity) shall be governed by, construed in accordance with, and interpreted pursuant to the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to its choice of laws principles.

[Signature page follows]

---

Very truly yours,

**MONOCLE ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Eric J. Zahler  
Name: Eric J. Zahler  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

AGREED TO AND ACCEPTED BY:

**MONOCLE MANAGEMENT LLC**

By: /s/ Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Name: Sai S. Devabhaktuni  
Title: Manager

[Signature Page to Administrative Services Agreement]

---

**Monocle Acquisition Corporation Announces Pricing of  
\$150 Million Initial Public Offering**

NEW YORK, Feb. 6, 2019 /PRNewswire/ — Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the “Company”), today announced the pricing of its initial public offering of 15,000,000 units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. The units are expected to be listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market (“Nasdaq”) and trade under the ticker symbol “MNCLU” beginning February 7, 2019. Each unit consists of one share of the Company’s common stock and one redeemable warrant. Each warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. Once the securities comprising the units begin separate trading, the Company expects that its common stock and warrants will be listed on Nasdaq under the symbols “MNCL” and “MNCLW,” respectively.

The Company was formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization, or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company’s efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region, although it intends to focus on businesses in the aerospace and defense, industrial, and technology and telecommunications sectors.

Cowen and Chardan are acting as joint book running managers. The Company has granted the underwriters a 45-day option to purchase up to 2,250,000 additional units at the initial public offering price to cover over-allotments, if any.

The public offering is being made only by means of a prospectus. When available, copies of the prospectus relating to the offering may be obtained from Cowen, c/o Broadridge Financial Solutions, 1155 Long Island Avenue, Edgewood, NY, 11717, Attn: Prospectus Department, or by telephone at 631-274-2806, or by fax at 631-254-7140; or Chardan, 17 State Street, Suite 1600, New York, NY, 10004, Attention: Prospectus Department, or by telephone at 646-465-9000, or by email at [prospectus@chardan.com](mailto:prospectus@chardan.com).

This press release shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any state or jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation, or sale would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such state or jurisdiction.

**Forward-Looking Statements**

This press release contains statements that constitute “forward-looking statements,” including with respect to the proposed initial public offering and the anticipated use of the net proceeds thereof. No assurance can be given that the offering discussed above will be completed on the terms described, or at all, or that the net proceeds of the offering will be used as indicated. Forward-looking statements are subject to numerous conditions, many of which are beyond the control of the Company, including those set forth in the Risk Factors section of the Company’s registration statement and preliminary prospectus for the Company’s offering filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”). Copies of these documents are available on the SEC’s website, [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). The Company undertakes no obligation to update these statements for revisions or changes after the date of this release, except as required by law.

**Contact:**

Eric J. Zahler  
President and CEO  
212-446-6981

---

**Monocle Acquisition Corporation Closes \$172.5 Million Initial Public Offering**

NEW YORK, Feb. 11, 2019 /PRNewswire/ — Monocle Acquisition Corporation (the “Company”) today announced that it closed its initial public offering of 17,250,000 units, which included 2,250,000 units issued pursuant to the full exercise by the underwriters of their over-allotment option. The offering was priced at \$10.00 per unit, resulting in gross proceeds of \$172,500,000, before deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and other offering expense payable by the Company. Of the proceeds received from the consummation of the initial public offering and a simultaneous private placement of units to the Company’s sponsors, Monocle Partners, LLC and Cowen Investments II LLC, \$174,225,000 was placed in trust.

The Company’s units began trading on the Nasdaq Capital Market (“Nasdaq”) under the ticker symbol “MNCLU” on February 7, 2019. Each unit consists of one share of the Company’s common stock and one redeemable warrant. Each warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. Once the securities comprising the units begin separate trading, the Company expects that its common stock and warrants will be listed on Nasdaq under the symbols “MNCL” and “MNCLW,” respectively.

The Company was formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization, or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company’s efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region, although it intends to focus on businesses in the aerospace and defense, industrial, and technology and telecommunications sectors. The proceeds of the offering will be used to fund such a business combination.

Cowen and Chardan acted as the joint book running managers.

The public offering was made only by means of a prospectus. Copies of the prospectus relating to the offering may be obtained from Cowen, c/o Broadridge Financial Solutions, 1155 Long Island Avenue, Edgewood, NY, 11717, Attn: Prospectus Department, or by telephone at 631-274-2806, or by fax at 631-254-7140; or Chardan, 17 State Street, Suite 1600, New York, NY, 10004, Attention: Prospectus Department, or by telephone at 646-465-9000, or by email at [prospectus@chardan.com](mailto:prospectus@chardan.com).

This press release shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any state or jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation, or sale would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such state or jurisdiction.

**Forward-Looking Statements**

This press release contains statements that constitute “forward-looking statements,” including with respect to the anticipated use of the net proceeds of the public offering. No assurance can be given that the net proceeds of the offering will be used as indicated. Forward-looking statements are subject to numerous conditions, many of which are beyond the control of the Company, including those set forth in the Risk Factors section of the Company’s registration statement and prospectus for the Company’s offering filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”). Copies of these documents are available on the SEC’s website, [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). The Company undertakes no obligation to update these statements for revisions or changes after the date of this release, except as required by law.

**Contact:**

Eric J. Zahler  
President and CEO  
212-446-6981

---